GANN MASTERS TECHNICAL ANALYSIS COURSE



HALLIKER'S, INC.

Publisher of *Trader's World Magazine* (c) 1995 Halliker's, Inc., ALL RIGHTS RESERVED. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

This course was prepared from information believed to be reliable but not guaranteed by us without further verification and does not purport to be complete. Opinions expressed are subject to revision without notification. We are not offering to buy or sell securities or commodities discussed. Halliker's Inc. or one or more of it's officers, and or authors may have a position in the securities or commodities discussed herein. The names of the products and services presented in this course are used only in editorial fashion and to the benefit of the trademark owner with no intention of infringing on trademark rights. Products and services in this course are subject to availability and prices are subject to change without notice.

The charts in the publication are printed by permission of Omega Research. They are developed from SuperCharts and TradeStation. Spread sheet examples were developed by the Microsoft Excel Spreadsheet program and are printed with permission of Microsoft Corporation.

This course is dedicated to Stella Bittel who recently passed away. She had the endurance to fight diabetes for the last fifty years.

Printed in the United States of America

Halliker's, Inc. 2508 W. Grayrock Dr. Springfield, MO 65810 Phone (417) 882-9697 Fax (417)886-5180

CONTENTS

•••••	•••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••••	•••••
Chapter 1	W.D. GANN A LEGEND	5
Chapter 2	STUDY AND BE PREPARED	15
Chapter 3	CAPITAL REQUIRED	21
Chapter 4	RIGHT KIND OF CHARTS	23
Chapter 5	KNOW THE TREND	31
Chapter 6	MATHEMATICS	36
Chapter 7	ELLIOTT WAVE THEORY	54
Chapter 8	THE TIME FACTOR	65
Chapter 9	SUPPORT AND RESISTANCE	72
Chapter 10	TIME AND PRICE OVERLAYS	77
Chapter 11	TABLE CHARTS	90
Chapter 12	TIME AND PRICE ANALYSIS	110
Chapter 13	FORECASTING TIME	121
Chapter 14	FORECASTING PRICE	136

4 Gann Masters

Chapter 15	EXCEL SPREAD SHEET145
Chapter 16	SWING CHARTS147
Chapter 17	GAPS150
Chapter 18	TOPS AND BOTTOMS152
Chapter 19	VOLUME AND OPEN INTEREST156
Chapter 20	GANN CHANNELS160
Chapter 21	TYPES OF ORDERS163
Chapter 22	MAKING IT WORK165
Appendix A	TEST APPLICATION168
Appendix B	CERTIFICATION170
Appendix C	CATALOG SUPPLIES172

CHAPTER 1

W.D. GANN A LEGEND

W.D. Gann grew up around cotton warehouse where cotton was king.

William Delbert Gann was born June 6, 1878, in Lufkin, Texas, to Sam H. and Susan R. Gann, immigrants to Texas from the British Isles. Lufkin is midway between Houston and Texarkana. This part of Texas is cotton country and Gann's parents lived on a Neches River bottom cotton ranch near Lufkin. He grew up around the cotton warehouses in Angelina County where cotton was king. W. D. Gann was raised in a very strict Methodist church family. His mother, a very religious person, encouraged him to read the Bible at a very early age, and in fact, wanted him to become a minister. Gann was not sure he wanted to become a minister, but studying the Bible was certainly easier than working in the cotton fields, as was his father's wish. He attended church every Sunday with his parents and as he listened to the sermons found his interpretation of the Bible scriptures to differ from the minister's. In the Bible he discovered time cycles, repetition of important numbers, and references to the wise men following the stars. Also, that it was written in veiled language that made interpreting the real meaning difficult. Since Gann had a photographic memory, by age 21 he had nearly memorized the Bible.

During his school years Gann excelled in mathematics and was generally called as a gifted mathematician. His tremendous appetite for knowledge and his open-minded attitude led him into many different fields of study that eventually resulted in discoveries in the markets that would otherwise have been overlooked. He completed high school in a time when most children were only able to attend school through the third or fourth grade.

As a teenager, Gann liked to be called W. D., and he used these initials the rest of his life. W. D. pestered his parents until they relented and signed a minor release form that he needed to obtain a job. His first job was that of a News Butcher on the passenger train between Texarkana and Tyler, Texas. This job required him to be quick-witted, aggressive, and able to deal with all kinds of people. During his teen years, he worked in the cotton warehouses in Lufkin and Texarkana, Texas. While working in the cotton warehouse, he was introduced to commodity trading. In 1902, at age 24, W. D. Gann made his first commodity trade in cotton, the market he knew best. The small profit from that trade marked the beginning of what was to become one of the most remarkable and legendary careers the speculative markets have ever known. Over the next 53 years, Gann took over \$50,000,000 from the markets. It has been reported by a man who worked for Gann the last eight years of Gann's life, that approximately 1/3 of the money he made was for himself and the other 2/3 was for the accounts he supervised for clients. From that very first trade, it is believed Gann was using principles and techniques he continued using throughout his trading career. The notations on some of his early charts substantiated this belief. As time progressed, his trading methods were refined.

In 1906 W. D. went to Oklahoma City. He worked as a broker for a brokerage firm, trading for himself while handling large accounts for clients. He studied the cause of success and failure in the speculation of other traders. He found that over 90% of traders who enter the markets without knowledge and study usually lose in the end. Gann also lost a significant amount of money and admitted his trading was based on hope, greed, and fear. Later on, in his books and courses, he cautioned all traders about these emotions.

Early on, Gann began to note the periodical recurrence of rise and fall in stocks and commodities. This led him to conclude that natural law was the basis of market movements. He then devoted ten years to the study of natural law as applicable to the speculative markets. During that time he traveled to England, Egypt, and India to gain knowledge in ancient mathematics and astrology. In the British Museum in England he conducted extensive research on market cycles. In an Egyptian temple it is believed he found the basic construction of what was to become known as his Square of 9 Chart. After exhaustive research and investigation of the known sciences, he discovered the Law of Vibration enabled him to accurately determine the exact prices to which stocks or commodities would trade within a given time, and that each stock or commodity had its own rate of vibration.

At age 27, Gann was a well-known name in the Southwest. His views on the analysis of cotton prices were so well respected that a Texarkana newspaper, The Daily Texarkanian, ran a story on Gann's cotton predictions.

In 1908, at age 30, Gann moved to New York and opened his own brokerage office at 18 Broadway. He began testing his theories and techniques in the market. On August 8, 1908, he made one of his greatest mathematical discoveries for predicting the trend of stocks and commodities. This was "The Master Time Factor." Within a year, it became clear to others that his success was based on more than just luck. No one researched time cycles as extensively as Gann. His charts show the cycles with which he worked, went back to history's beginning, and bore no resemblance to other researcher's time cycle studies. In October 1909, Richard D. Wyckoff, Owner and Editor of The Ticker and Investment Digest asked Gann for an interview to document his trading ability for one month. The interview was granted, and Gann's trades were monitored for 25 market days during the month of October in the presence of a Ticker representative. At that time the markets also traded on Saturday. Gann made 286 trades in various stocks, both long and short. There were 264 trades that resulted in profits and 22 in losses. 92.3% of the trades were profitable. The capital used doubled ten times resulting in 1000% gain on his original investment during those 25 trading days. What makes this even more phenomenal is that Gann did this with an average time between each trade of about twenty minutes. In one day Gann made 16 trades in the same stock, 8 of which were in either the top eighth or the bottom eighth of that particular swing. Such a performance is unparalleled in the history of Wall Street. As stated by James R. Keene, the famous speculator of that era, "The man who is right 6 times out of 10 will make his fortune."

It seems a foregone conclusion that Gann was picking tops and bottoms with a high degree of accuracy. At this point of time, in 1909, he was only 31 years of age, so whatever methods he was using had already been discovered.

This biographer believes that after his sensational performance Gann regretted having granted the interview, as it was stated in the printed article that he did not know the results were to be published. When the article was printed in The Ticker Investment Digest, Gann was besieged with people asking how he was able to pick tops and bottoms as he had demonstrated. His only answer to them was he used The Law of Vibration to make all his calculations. At this conjuncture there were only two choices: 1) to give away his secret discoveries and risk destroying the markets, or 2) to detract from his method of picking tops and bottoms by writing books and courses about mechanical trading systems, the use of geometrical anges, the use of Time and Price Charts, such as the Octagon Chart (Square of 9), Master 12 Chart (Square of 144), Hexagon Chart (the cube), Square of 90, Square of 52, 360 Degree Circle Chart, and many other trading techniques.

If Gann had continued trading using only his method of picking tops and bottoms, without a doubt he would have become one of the wealthiest men in the world, and in so doing would have attracted too much attention. He would have been asked too many questions by traders and would have been compelled to explain. However, at certain times, he probably used his method to advantage. Gann had a profound understanding of natural law, so rather than place himself in an embarrassing situation, he chose to trade using his mechanical systems and other techniques he had developed. Also, having more capital than was required for a good living was not important to him, as he was more interested in the knowledge possessed by ancient civilizations and the occult sciences. Gann understood how the Laws of Nature controlled human beings and, therefore, he understood the markets, because the markets are nothing more than an expression of the actions of human beings.

The two previous paragraphs are my belief. You may agree or disagree, but before you arrive at a conclusion, carefully study Gann's 1909 trading demonstration. He made 286 trades in 25 days, which is 11 trades per day. To do this, you must pick the tops and bottoms on a short intraday time period.

If what I believe is true, it is very sad to think that a genius individual such as W. D. Gann, had to disguise the truth throughout his life, with a smoke screen of many trading methods and techniques.

In 1918 his office address in New York was 81 New Street and in the early 1920's was at 49 Broadway. Over the years, Gann maintained several offices in New York all located on Wall Street with the address numbers of 78, 80, 82, 88, 91, 93 and 99.

At the height of Gann's career, he employed 35 individuals who made charts of all kinds, did analytical research at his direction, and performed many duties involved with his various publications and services. The name of one of his businesses was W. D. Gann Scientific Service, Inc., and the other, initiated in 1919, was W. D. Gann Research, Inc. The firms published the following Supply and Demand Letters: Daily Stock Letter, Tri-Weekly Stock Letter, Weekly Stock Letter, Daily Commodity Letter, Tri-Weekly Commodity Letter, and Weekly Commodity Letter. Telegraph Service was all offered as follows: Daily Telegraph Service on Stocks, Daily Telegraph Service on Cotton, Daily Telegraph Service on Grain, and Telegrams on important Changes Only, on Stocks or Commodities. Published under Annual Forecasts were: Annual Stock Forecast, Annual Cotton Forecast, Annual Grain Forecast, Annual Rubber Forecast, Annual Coffee, Sugar and Cocoa Forecast. Supplements to all Forecasts were issued and mailed on the first of each month. Special Forecasts on stocks or other commodities were made on request. Also offered were daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, and swing charts on stocks and commodities. Gann taught advanced courses of instruction entitled Master Forecasting Method, at a cost of \$2,500, and New Mechanical Method and Trend Indicator, at a cost of \$5,000, to those who want it for their own use and will not publish, sell, or teach it to others. It is too valuable to be spread broadcasted. The cost of these courses and personal instruction in today's economics would be \$25,000 to \$50,000, or more.

As early as 1923, Gann offered a service entitled "The Busy-Man's Service." This was a service for professional and businessmen where Gann supervised their trading accounts by advising them what and when to buy and sell. In later years the name of this service was changed to "Personal Service." The cost of this service was on a 1 month, 3 months, 6 months, or annual basis, or on a Part-of-Profit Plan where the monthly fee was smaller and Gann received 5% of the net profits. Under the Part-of-Profit Plan it was

required that a minimum of 100 shares be traded. The clients were advised by telegram or letter.

An article in The Evening Telegram dated New York, Monday, March 5, 1923, used the words "prophet" and "mathematical seer" to describe Gann. It also stated his followers declared he was 85% correct in his forecasts. He predicted the election of Wilson and Harding using fortunate numbers and fortunate letters combined with cycles. He predicted the abdication of the Kaiser and the end of the war to the exact date six months in advance. His predictions were based on mathematics. He stated if he had the data he would use algebra and geometry to tell exactly by the theory of cycles when a certain thing is going to occur again. He further stated that there is no chance in nature, because mathematical principles of the highest order lie at the foundation of all things. The article pointed out that Gann received calls every day from prominent persons asking him to cast their horoscope. It also said he told politicians whether or not they would be elected and solved problems for clergymen, bankers, and statesmen.

In another article in the Morning Telegraph, dated Sunday, December 17, 1922, the Financial Editor, Arthur Angy, stated that "W. D. Gann had scored another astounding hit in his 1922 stock forecast issued in December, 1921, I found his 1921 forecast so remarkable that I secured a copy of his 1922 stock forecast to prove his claims for myself. And now, at the closing of the current year of 1922, it is but justice to say I am more than amazed by the result of Mr. Gann's remarkable predictions based on pure science and mathematical calculations."

W. D. and his wife, Sadie H. Gann, had one son and three daughters born to their marriage. Their son, John L. Gann, was in partnership with his father for several years in the late 1930's and early 1940's, operating under the firm name of W. D. Gann & Son, Inc. Apparently, the two personalities were not always compatible, as their association was ended in the mid 1940's. This writer has been told one of their main differences concerned astrology, as John did not believe astrology had any effect on market movements, or human behavior. This probably upset W. D. as he knew well the effect of planetary motion on the markets and the individual. Following the association with his father, John served as a broker for many years for the firm Sulzbacher, Granger & Co. in New York City. It is believed that John passed away in 1984.

For many years Gann maintained a home in Scarsdale, New York, which was, at the time, the estate bedroom community for New York City. In an article that appeared in the May 26, 1933 New York Daily Investment News, it was reported that Gann left New York in the first 1933 model Stinson Reliant airplane, piloted by Flinor Smith, a woman aviator, to conduct an extensive tour of the country analyzing cotton, wheat, and tobacco crops, and busi-

ness conditions. The airplane was equipped with navigation instruments, radio receiving equipment and extra-large fuel tanks that gave a flying range of 750 miles. It was powered with a Lycoming engine and cruised at 135 miles per hour. Gann was the first Wall Street advisor to use an airplane for studying market conditions so he could advise clients much faster of changing market conditions. During his trip he was a speaker to members of Kiwanis, Rotary, Chamber of Commerce, and other business organizations in various larger cities throughout the United States.

In 1935, Gann made an airplane trip to South America for studying crop conditions, and to gather information on the increase and production of cotton in Peru, Chili, Argentina, and Brazil. He logged 18,000 miles by air and another 1,000 miles by automobile.

In July of 1936 Gann purchased a specially built all metal airplane, which he named "The Silver Star," and used in making crop surveys. In July of 1939 he purchased a new Fairchild airplane for the same purpose.

Gann was a member of the Commodity Exchange, Inc. of New York, the New Orleans Cotton Exchange, the Rubber Exchange of New York, the Royal Economic Society of London, the American Economic Society, the Masonic Lodge, the Shrine, the Chicago Board of Trade, and was a devout Christian in the Methodist Church.

Gann had a winter home in Miami, Florida, and in the 1940's moved there on a full-time basis. His office was at 820 S. W. 26th Road in Miami. While in Florida, he continued his advisory services as well as teaching his commodity and stock market courses, either in person or by mail. By the late 1940's he had a recommended list of Books For Sale that included the subjects of numerology, astrology, scientific, and miscellaneous. He was involved in real estate holdings, and enjoyed large automobiles, especially Lincolns, which he purchased new yearly. In 1954, after making several successful coffee and soybean trades, Gann purchased a fast express cruising boat that he named "The Coffee Bean." It was reported that Gann wore the same type of suit throughout his life, and that his home was filled with items collected in his world travels. He vacationed often in South America. But, in the opinion of his peers, he did not live beyond his means.

W. D. Gann wrote some of the best books ever written on the stock and commodity markets. The following is a list of the books written by him and the year they were published:

Speculation a Profitable Profession The Truth of the Stock Tape The Tunnel Thru the Air Wall Street Stock Selector Stock Trend Detector Scientific Stock Forecasting How to Make Profits Trading in Puts and Calls Face Facts America. Looking Ahead to 1950 How to Make Profits Trading in Commodities 45 Years in Wall Street The Magic Word How to Make Profits Trading in Commodities

Gann was a prolific writer. His style of writing was unique. Readers of his books considered him to be a poor writer with a limited use of the English language. Not so! Upon methodic study of his work, the reader will discover in time the Gann method of teaching. He will inspire the reader to research everything from the origin of numbers to the musical scale and vibrations.

W. D. Gann, in my estimation, was a genius. He was born a Gemini with a high intellectual capacity, and a dual personality that caused him to be both genial and obstinate. He was a gifted mathematician, an expert chart reader, and had an extraordinary memory for figures. Take away his science and he would beat the market on chart reading alone. One of Gann's most important technical tools was his charts and no one kept up as many as he did. Gann's charts encompassed 55 years, from 1900 to 1955. During this time thousands of daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, yearly, and other various charts, were made with great care, each a work of art. He believed charting was an art and if you understood everything the chart was showing, it would aid in forecasting the next day, week, or month's, price movements. Gann was a workaholic, at times working 17 hours per day, 6 days per week. He was very demanding of those who worked with and for him, and expected the same effort from them that he himself put forth. He expected to issue instructions only once and did not feel it should be necessary to repeat them.

Gann was deeply analytical and studied price actions of various stocks and commodities back through the years. He spent nine months in the British Museum working day and night researching stock and commodity prices and dates from 1820, and wheat prices and dates from 1200. He also spent long hours and long days in the Astor Library in New York City researching stock and commodity markets. He was a student of numbers, number theory, progressions, and the progression of numbers. His trading system was based on natural law and mathematics. Since time progresses as the earth rotates on its axis and in its order, and time is measured by numbers and progression of numbers, and prices in their movement upward and downward are also measured in numbers, it is understandable why Gann had an intense interest in numbers, number theory, and mathematics. A keen understanding of natural laws and their effect on mankind have a direct effect on the markets. The markets are only extensions or reflections of man's actions.

In Gann's time there were no calculators. He used a slide rule and the

various master charts he developed, such as the Square of 9, for his calculator. He kept an open mind to any trading ideas to achieve perfection. When making his forecasts, he used many methods to arrive at the time for a trend change, and all of them to confirmed he was correct. In his early trading he made thousands of dollars. But, by listening to false rumors and other people's ideas, he also lost thousands of dollars. In 1913 and again in 1919, he lost small fortunes when the brokerage firms he was trading with went bankrupt. One of these firms was Murray Mitchell and Company. In those days the client's funds were not protected by exchange regulations in case of a failure, as they are today.

During this time he was also involved in two bank failures. Regardless of these losses and misfortunes, he was always able to rely upon mathematical science to aid him in making a financial comeback. This is why Gann states that knowledge of the market is more important than money.

Today, people believe "times are different," but Gann's time saw its bull markets and panics in the stock market, bull markets and panics, in the commodity market, wars, inflationary periods, depressions, bank closings, etc. In 1921 the rate of inflation was 100%. Strikes were rampant, jobs impossible to find, and productivity at very low levels. The Great Depression of 1929 to 1932 and the outright confiscation of the citizen's gold that was exchanged for printed money, left deep scars on the country and it's citizens. W. D. Gann was avidly against the New Deal and Roosevelt's creeping socialism. Therefore, to learn from other people's past experiences, people today should understand Gann's famous quotation, "The future is but a repetition of the past, or as the Bible says, the thing that hath been, it is that which shall be; and that which is done, is that which shall be done; and there is no new thing under the Sun." Gann said, "The average man's memory is too short. He only remembers what he wants to remember or what suits his hopes and fears. He depends too much on others and does not think for himself. Therefore, he should keep a record, graph, or picture of past market movements to remind him what has happened in the past can, and will, happen in the future. Panics will come and bull markets will follow just as long as the world stands and they are just as sure as the ebb and flow of the tides, because it is the nature of man to overdo everything. He goes to the extreme when he gets hopeful and optimistic. When fear takes hold of him, he goes to the extreme in the other direction."

The following is taken from 45 Years in Wall Street and is very good advice and very true in today's world. "Every man takes out of life just exactly according to what he puts in. We reap just what we sow. A man who pays with time and money for knowledge and continues to study and never gets to the point where he thinks he knows all there is to know, but realizes that he can still learn, is the man who will make a success in speculation or in investments. I am trying to tell you the truth and give you the benefit of over 45 years of operating in stocks and commodity markets and point out to you the weak points that will prevent you from meeting with disaster. Speculation can be made a profitable profession. Wall Street can be beaten and there is money operating in commodities and the stock market if you follow the rules and always realize that the unexpected can happen and be prepared for it."

In How to Make Profits in Commodities -- Gann made the following comments regarding knowledge as he believed knowledge is power. All who read this should heed and always remember his advice. "The difference between success and failure in trading in commodities is the difference between one man knowing and following fixed rules and the other man guessing. The man who guesses usually loses. Therefore, if you want to make a success and make profits, your object must be to know more; study all the time; never think that you know it all. I have been studying stocks and commodities for forty years, and I do not know it all yet. I expect to continue to learn something every year as long as I live. Observations, and keen comparisons of past market movements, will reveal what commodities are going to do in the future, because the future is but a repetition of the past. Time spent in gaining knowledge is money in the bank. You can lose all the money you may accumulate or that you may inherit - that is if you have no knowledge of how to take care of it - but with knowledge you can take a small amount of money and make more after time spent in gaining knowledge. A study of commodities will return rich rewards."

Sometime in 1947, Gann sold W. D. Gann Research, Inc. to C. C. Loosli, a San Francisco attorney. He became disenchanted with the business and on February 14, 1948, W. D. Gann Research, Inc. was transferred to Mr. Joseph L. Lederer of St. Louis, Missouri. The office for W. D. Gann Research, Inc. was maintained at 82 Wall Street in New York until 1952. Then it was moved to Scarsdale, New York, and in 1956 relocated to St. Louis, Missouri, where its only business was that of investment adviser.

In 1950 in Miami, Florida, Gann and a partner, Ed Lambert, founded Lambert-Gann Publishing Co. Ed Lambert was an architect who designed the Inter-State Highway System in the greater Miami area Lambert Gann Publishing Co. published all Gann's books and courses.

W. D. Gann passed away in the Methodist Hospital in Brooklyn, New York, on June 14, 1955, at the age of 77. He was survived by his wife, Sadie, three daughters, and a son. That day the world truly lost a market legend.

After Mr. Gann's death in 1955, Ed Lambert continued to operate the business that included a chart service of updated Gann style charts. He was not as active in promoting Gann's writings as when Gann was alive, so for the following twenty years Gann's work became quite obscure. In 1976 Bill and Nikki Jones of Pomeroy, Washington, purchased Lambert-Gann Publishing Co. and the Gann copyrights. In the purchase were all of his personal research including thousands of his charts, papers, books, and writings he had collected through fifty years of trading and research. There were also tables and miscellaneous office furniture used by Gann. The largest Mayflower moving van available was required to transport this purchase to Pomeroy, Washington. Following Billy Jones' death in September 1989, Nikki Jones continues to operate Lambert Gann Publishing Co., carrying on the Gann tradition with the sale of his books and courses. In this biographer's opinion, W. D. Gann was the greatest market researcher of all time. His trading career spanned more than a half century. During that time he devoted his total life to market research and trading. He researched every possible aspect of natural laws in conjunction with variables of price and time in market movements. This study became an obsession to find the cause and effect of market fluctuations, which he did. The trading techniques Gann developed work the same today as they did when he used them. His library contained volumes of books and manuscripts on harmonic waves, proportion, growth, gravity, electricity, nature, and natural phenomena. However, there were no books on open interest, volume, stocks, or commodities.

The only books and courses on commodities and stocks were his own. He was a humble man who stated, at age 75, that he had not learned all there was to know, and yet, he knew more about the markets than any trader who ever lived. There is an important lesson to be learned from the study of his life and his work. For those of you who have diligently studied his writings, you will understand my statements. Hopefully, for those of you who are not familiar with Gann, this writing will inspire you to begin.

This introduction of W.D. Gann was written by Les Clemens

CHAPTER 2

STUDY AND BE PREPARED

"Many times the reading of a book has made the fortune of a man and has changed his way in life."

I f when you are trading, you find yourself feeling inadequate and unable to face making decisions with enthusiasm and confidence, then this course is for you. Are you finding yourself making trades that lose money. You can change and force yourself to become more confident and successful in trading and awaken a new trader within you with Gann Masters. It doesn't matter who you are or what type of person you are, you can find self-confidence in trading.

If you look around at your friends and business associates that you know trade or invest in the markets, you will find that very few of these people are successful in the markets. Most of them lack the confidence and conviction in trading. The majority have surrendered to losses. Statistics say that 90% of people lose in the commodity markets. People blame their brokers, floor traders, outside circumstances or other conditions for their failure to trade profitably. Eventually, most people think that their trading is so much controlled by outside events that they give up trying to improve their results and eventually quit.

W.D. Gann, the greatest trader of all time wrote, "Speculation or investment is the best business in the world if you make a business of it. But in order to make a success of it you must study and be prepared and not guess, follow inside information, or depend on hope or fear. If you do, you will fail. Your success depends on knowing the right kind of rules and following them." He said that lawyers, doctors, engineers and professional men who make a success spend anywhere from two to five years time studying and preparing to practice their profession before making any money. Yet people enter into speculation in Wall Street without any preparation. They have made no study of it at all. They try to deal in something they know nothing about. Is it any wonder then that they lose? Speculators and investors who simply guess, follow tips, rumors, newspaper talk and so called "inside information" have no chance of ever making a success. Unless they follow some well-defined plan based on science and supply and demand, they are sure to lose".

Gann Masters is in a unique position to give you the rules of successful Gann trading. The years of study and experience by the writers of this course will give you the necessary rules and instructions that will lead to your success in the markets. You must be willing to study and learn the chapters in this course. It will take you long hours of study and practice, but you cannot get something for nothing. It will cost you time and money, but it will be worth it in the end.

You must change your inner aspect of what kind of a trader you are. You must believe that you are different from most all other traders and that you are going to be as successful as W.D. Gann was in the markets. You are not what other people think you are, but what you think you are.

Don't concentrate on your limitations or your failures of past trading. You have been conditioned since you started trading by people with false ideas and values. This has limited your full potential. You have the power to change your trading. You must realize your worth as a strong person and a very successful trader.

We can't change the trading of everyone, but we can help you to change your own trading. You as an individual trader must take it on yourself to improve your trading. This course will give you all the information you need to do this. There is a lot of information contained in this course. One sentence or statement may contain the necessary missing link in your trading. That link may be what makes you a successful trader. You must study every part of this course and not ignor anything. The time has come for you to stop your bad habits of trading and start putting in the time and money to become a very successful Gann trader.

It has been determined that it takes approximately three weeks to learn a new idea. It will take you that long to fully understand what is in a chapter. Don't misunderstand me, you may understand what was written, but it will take three weeks of review before it is imbedded into your mind and it is a habit. Put all things aside while you are studying a chapter. The hours you spend will be a small investment compared to the return that you will receive.

To get the best results from these chapters, read the entire chapter through once. Then return to the chapters that will help you understand the current one. If necessary reread the current chapter to pick up anything you missed. Emerson once said: "Many times the reading of a book has made the fortune of a man and has changed his way in life. To use books rightly is to go to them for help; to appeal to them when our knowledge and power fail; to be led by them into wider sight and clear conception of our own." Now, if you are ready, let's begin.

You must now assume that the truths you now hold to be true may in fact

be false and those truths may hold you back from your full potential as a successful Gann trader. Don't believe that you can become a very successful trader just with will power alone. Negative ideas in your imagination can defeat you. No matter how hard you try, it will be of no use.

You must open your mind freely to all new ideas and forget all false truths you believe to be true. There is no limit to what you can do if you use your full imagination to work to becoming a successful trader. Once you believe that you are a trader as good or better than W. D. Gann, then you will act as though it were true. You have been unknowingly limiting your full potential through your "mistaken certainties" in your mind. If you can eliminate these "mistaken certainties", your potential for successful trading will go well beyond anything you know.

You must now awake to the truth and limitations that you have imposed on yourself. You must now assume that many truths you now hold are in fact false and that these truths are keeping you back from fully using your potential. You are primarily a product of what you have been taught up to now. If you want to change and become a successful trader, you must learn to understand everything that is taught to you and not believe it to be true, until you have proved it to yourself. You will be given many Gann trading techniques, but do not accept them as truth, until you have proved them out to yourself.

You must be self-reliant. This will be a deterrent to the idea that other traders are smarter, wiser or more intelligent than you are. And, so, you look to them for support for trading ideas that may be unprofitable. It is impossible to become a very successful trader if you are thinking other traders are smarter than you are.

When you become self-reliant you also will have the courage to listen to your inner feeling for hints or signs that you are on the right track. You will be taking a cue from the successful trader you are, not listening to someone outside of your inner thoughts. When you learn to follow the signs correctly and your inner promptings for hints on how to trade a particular situation, you will be a successful trader.

Dependency on the ideas of another trader is slavery by your own consent. It's very degrading for you to be dependent on the trading ideas of another person. One sure sign of dependency is that you will look up to the other trader as superior.

Advice from others in the trading arena is everywhere. Most of it is free and not worth anything. You can have at any one time a dozen unpaid advisors who want to give you their opinion. Most of these advisors are, in fact, not qualified to give advice, but merely have the title that shows that they must know what they are talking about. Most of these advisors can't trade their own accounts successfully, so how can they advise you to trade successfully. Overcoming your dependency on other traders is difficult to do. You have been trained since childhood to depend on other people. It did play an important role in your growing up and education, but it was never meant to take over your individual identity or thinking.

Remember this important saying, "No one can ever let you down if you haven't been leaning on them." No one can make you lose money in the markets, if you are not dependent on them for your trading ideas. Once you have developed your self-reliance, you do not have to procrastinate or evade making a decision to make a trade, because you will be confident to meet the situation with total self-assurance.

You must accept yourself as a successful and intelligent trader. You can never be better than your own self-acceptance as a successful trader. Almost all of your problems in making trades are directly a result of how you feel about yourself as a successful trader. You can never be a better trader than how good of one you feel you are. You must have positive self-esteem about your own trading talents and abilities.

Many traders seem to have a high self-esteem about their own trading talents and abilities on the surface. However, underneath, they are victims of their own low self-esteem. This low self-esteem gets worse the longer they trade, until they go broke or completely give up. If you hope to be a successful trader, you must develop a high self-esteem of your own trading abilities.

You must love studying and applying the techniques of Gann to the markets. Learn to love studying and applying the trading techniques to the markets. There is not one successful Gann trader who does not fully love what he is doing. You will have to spend many hours studying, learning and researching mathematical trading techniques, but it will be enjoyable and financially rewarding. How much you love what you're doing, whether it be your current job or studying the techniques of W. D. Gann, will determine how successful you are.

Everything you need for successful trading lies within you. Your mind is your most usable asset to succeed in learning and trading the techniques of W.D. Gann. If you knew the powers in your mind, it would stagger your imagination. You must make full use of this very powerful resource to succeed in trading. You need to go way beyond what you think your mind can do. Don't let it be limited by what you think it can do. Don't look elsewhere for help, because you have in your mind all the great power to understand and fully use Gann techniques to trade and succeed with.

Successful trading requires that you devote yourself to fulfilling specific financial goal. If you do not fully commit yourself to this goal, you will be like a ship without a chart to follow and will eventually end up shipwrecked on a lost shore. Studies have shown that individuals that have a definite plan are more likely to succeed and be happy in life. At this time in beginning your studies of Gann, you need to make a plan that will use all your talents and abilities. You must take the time right now to figure out how much you want to study and what you want to do with this knowledge of trading, otherwise, you will end up like a shipwrecked captain.

If you are to achieve your maximum potential as a trader you must give yourself a physical and mental rest and relaxation period with inner communication through meditation. The meditation will establish a contact with the inner source of power within you. It will cleanse your mind and open it up to be receptive to the techniques of Gann. When you have trouble understanding a part of Gann, it will guide you back to the right path again and help you to achieve your full potential. It will also help you feel totally a peace with yourself.

Eliminate fear of failing. Fear has been around in trading the markets since they began. It has been the major cause of all market crashes. Fear is your enemy and a destructive emotion which will destroy your self-confidence in trading. If you are afraid, it is impossible to become very successful at trading. To remove any fear in yourself, you must have a positive mental attitude about yourself. Use the power within you to gain success at trading the markets and eliminate fear. Live a day at a time. Make positive statements to yourself continually during the day to help your mental attitude.

You must study the markets and know and understand them fully. You must prove all rules and techniques you have in your tool box. When you see the rules and techniques work over and over again, your confidence will overtake the fear you once had in trading the markets. As you cultivate a positive mental attitude about trading with the techniques of W.D. Gann, a new successful you will occur to trade the markets. You will be a trader with power and direction. Once you have fully committed yourself, you will never be the same again.

CHAPTER 3

CAPITAL REQUIRED

You must make a plan of capital preservation to be successful in the markets.

It is very important that you understand the amount of capital required to trade the markets. You want to have the ability to continue to trade the markets for the next year to twenty years without being wiped out. Most traders have no capital trading plan, use fear and greed to trade by, and over trade. It's no wonder that 90% of commodity traders lose. Those 10 % that do make money, of course, are the ones that have learned how to trade. They make all the money that the others lose. If you make a plan of capital preservation, you will always have the necessary capital to trade with, even if you have the expected losses in the markets. If you put all your capital at risk in the markets on a couple trades, like so many traders do, then you will surely lose it all and be out of the game. "Preservation of capital" is your first rule to apply with all your trades.

On the Chicago Board of Trade, the grains trade in units of 5000 bushels. When wheat is trading where it is now at \$3.50 - \$3.75 per bushel, you need 20% of the value of the total contract to safely trade the market, though the exchanges charge only 5% margin. If you fully leverage your position on the 5% margin, you will be scared out of the markets with fear and greed and will surely lose, so use the 20% margin rule to safeguard your capital. If wheat is selling at \$3.75, you would multiply this amount times 5000 bushels to get \$18,750 as the total value of the contract. 20% of the contract value is \$3750. Therefore to trade a 5000 bushel contract of wheat at \$3.75, you should have \$3750 of capital. The exchange margin on a contract of wheat at that level is about \$1000 or 5%. You therefore have an excess of \$2750 over the initial margin required. Divide the \$2750 by 10 giving you a potential of 10 trades possible with a maximum loss of \$275 each before you're out of the game. Your average risk, should never be more than 10% of the excess capital above the initial margin rate of the contract. You should have enough money to trade the market 10 times, and have ten straight losses, before you would be wiped out. This should never happen, if you have a trading plan and trade according to the rules of successful trading, which you will learn in this course. It's very rare that you would even have three consecutive losses, and even if you did,

then the next trade could make you 10% on your money giving you a large gain over your small losses. Your capital for trading commodity markets should be at least 20% of the total contract value. You should never risk more than 10% of your excess margin money on any one trade, so you can trade at least 10 times before you are out of the game. If the market is in a major uptrend, as the market gets higher, you will need more capital to trade. If wheat rises to \$4.50 per bushel, you will need \$4500 to trade each contract and you would never risk more than 10% of your excess margin capital on each trade, so you could have 10 losing trades before you were out of the market.

In the stock market, the capital requirement rules are different. If you buy stocks, you have two choices, either put up the full purchase price of the stock or put the stock on margin and put up 50% of the value of the stock and pay interest on the other 50% usually at 1% above broker call rate. In either case, you still must follow the rules of capital preservation. Never risk more than 10% of your trading capital above the initial margin required on any one trade. If you purchase 100 shares of a stock at \$50.00 per share the total amount of the transaction is \$5000. I am not taking into account commission for this example, but for your own trading you also need to take into account commission costs. If you purchase this on margin, you would have to put up 50% or \$2500. You should have at least 50% of the total value of the stock above the initial margin. Divide this 50% into 10 equal parts to figure out what amount each stop should be. You can vary this percent, but it must be based on how active the stock is. If you use the same rule that is used in commodities, you would not risk more than 10% of the excess margin on any one trade. Therefore in this case, 50% of the total value of the stock is \$2500 and that divided into 10 equal parts is \$250 maximum loss per trade to stay in the game.

Margin for trading a contract of wheat 3.75 per bushel X 5000 bushels

\$1850 X 20%

= \$3750 necessary capital - \$1000 initial capital

= \$2750 excess capital divided by 10

= \$275 the amount of stop for each trade

which means there is a maximum of 10 losing trades with this stop

EXHIBIT 3.1 Capitial Preservation

CHAPTER 4

RIGHT KIND OF CHARTS

To start trading according to the rules of W.D. Gann you must have the right kind of charts.

I t's very important to have the right kind of charts to follow stocks or com modities. The major problem with most traders is, they do not have the right kind of charts to study the market correctly. If you talk to a carpenter or a surgeon or any professional person, they will tell you the importance of having the necessary tools to get the job done right. Can you imagine a surgeon operating on a patient with a dull scaple or a carpenter using a dull saw? We'll that's precisely what a trader is doing when he trades with most of today's published chart services. Traders risk thousands of dollars trading with ineffective tools. If you are going to build a house, it is very important to build it on a strong foundation. To start trading according to the rules of W. D. Gann you must have the right foundation, and that's proper and correct charts.

BAR CHARTS

Bar charts are the type of charts that you should set up. They should be set up correctly according to price and time. They must be set up either on a high, low, close basis or on an open, high, low close basis. It is necessary that you have enough update space so you can project out future points of time and price. The update space should be labeled out in the future with the year, month and day's date. This is another thing that is very wrong with most chart services, they don't put enough update space out to the right of the chart so you can the proper projecting of prices. On a daily chart you should have at least 1 year of update space, a weekly chart should have 2-3 years and a monthly chart should have 3-5 years of update space.

HOLIDAYS

A holiday on a daily chart must be omitted (do no leave a space for it). When you are projecting out into the future you must be aware of when the holidays occur so you can adjust your charts for them. Usually toward the end of the prior year, around November to December most brokerage firms and some financial magazines will publish the dates that the exchanges are closed on. There has been much discussion regarding the type of charts to keep. Should you keep a regular Gann type chart which omits weekends and holidays? This type of chart plots only market days. Or, should you keep up a calendar day bar chart. This type of chart leaves blank spaces for both holidays and weekends when the market did not trade. The answer to this important question is that it takes too much time to keep both types of charts up. You should only keep up Gann style charts and use the Excel spreadsheet for calendar day time counts. You do need to be aware of both calendar and market day timing. When a market makes a high it will bottom out a set number of market trading days and calendar days out in the future. Time counts will be discussed in a later chapter.

MARKET REPORTS

It's very important to mark on the update space on your charts the market reports that directly effect your commodity or stock. For example, if you are trading cattle, you would mark on the update space the dates of all the cattleon-feed reports. You also need to mark the quarterly pig reports on the chart as they affect cattle prices. The grain reports have some influence on cattle prices, so they should also be marked on the charts also. Often important projected highs or lows will occur on the day after a market report. If you have several important cycles hitting near a major report day, then probably the day after the report day will be the timing or reversal day. Most important reports come after the market closes. That's why we say the day after the report will be the timing day. If the report is during the trading hours of the commodity or stock, then that day will probably be the timing day.

MOON AND SUN CYCLES

It's also very important to mark on the update space on your charts the days that full or new moons and Sun Ellipses occur. Many major pivot points in the markets occur during these cycle times of the sun and moon.

IMPORTANT FUTURE MONTHS

A good set of charts should include the key months of future contracts of the year in commodity future contracts. For example, in most commodities the 12th and 6th positions of the cycle (December and June) are the most important and the 3rd and 9th positions (March and October) are the second most important. You should keep charts on all four of the important months, if you are trading actively.

PROPER SCALE

The proper scale is very important. The correct scale can be determined from how plastic overlays fit the charts. You will learn about overlays in a later chapter. The master time and price overlays were one of the most significant discoveries W.D. Gann ever made. He said that himself before he died. To determine if your overlays are working properly, the 1 x 1 angle on the overlays should usually hit the 50% reaction of prices and bounce off at least the first time. Once you see this on many charts you will understand the principal. The scaling is also very important. The rule in commodities is to use the following order in scaling. See Exhibit 4.1 in this chapter for more exact details on what to use on each individual commodity.

DECIMAL commodities	FRACTION commodities
.10	1 cents
.20	2 cents
.40	4 cents
.80	8 cents
1.00	10 cents

TIME FORMAT

The charts you use should be correctly formatted into the right time format to be effective for trading. We recommend using charts going back 20 - 100 years in the following time formats:

Daily Weekly Monthly Yearly

For intraday charts you should use the following time formats:

60 Minute 30 Minute 15 Minute 5 Minute 2 Minute

SCROLLS

Since the charts you use will be Gann style, they will be very long and it will be necessary for them to be in scrolls. This is a much better method than laying them on top of each other, because they can be more easily and compared to each other. Comparison of this years chart patterns with prior harmonic years is very important. W.D. Gann did a lot of pattern matching of past markets with current ones. Your charts are very important. They are the life blood of your trading. Some traders use a cardboard mail box of slots that they can slide their scroll charts into. This cardboard mail box can be purchased at most office supply stores. It keeps them safe and dry.

LINKING CONTRACTS TOGETHER

In using Gann Style charts it is necessary to link the contracts together correctly. The procedure for linking contracts together is very simple and is necessary for the proper continuation of the time series of prices.

DAILY

For the current contract, for example, December 1990 corn, plot all the prices to the end of the contract including the last trading day. Then start with the next contract, 1991 corn and start plotting those prices in sequence till the end of the 1991 contract then start with the 1992 contract. Always use the same month of contracts linking them together, for example Dec. 1989, Dec. 1990, Dec. 1991 and so on.

WEEKLY

For weekly charts plot all the daily prices inside the weekly to the end of the contract. For example if the trading on a commodity like Dec. 1990 corn stopped in the middle of the week, stop there and continue the daily prices on the Dec. 1991 contract in that same weekly price bar.

MONTHLY

For monthly charts plot all the daily prices inside the monthly to the end of the contract. For example if the trading on a commodity like Dec. 1990 corn stopped in the middle of the month, stop there and continue the daily prices on the Dec. 1991 contract in that same monthly price bar.

YEARLY

For yearly charts plot all the daily prices inside the yearly to the end of the contract. For example, if the trading on a commodity like Dec. 1990 corn stopped in the middle of the year, stop there and continue the daily prices on the Dec. 1991 contract in that same yearly price bar.

CONTINUOUS

Many people use a type of chart called a continuous contract chart. These are the type of weekly charts that are in almost of the chart services. In this type of contract all the nearby months of a commodity are linked together, for example, Dec. 1990 corn, Mar. 1990 corn, Jun. 1990 corn and so on. It's OK to use this type of chart to find rough cycles with using an Ehrlich Cycle Finder, but they are not very good for projecting accurate price and cycle projections according to the rules of W.D. Gann.

TIME AND PRICE LABELS

The time and price labels at the bottom of the chart are very important. The

date bar should be correctly labeled at the bottom of the chart showing year, month and day. The prices should be correctly labeled on the side with price divisions in circle numbers if possible. Circle numbers will be explained in another chapter.

CHART SERVICES

The availability of good charts is hard to come by. Most chart services do not give you daily prices that go back far enough. They usually give you only about 6-7 months of daily data. That is not enough to do long term research necessary for Gann trading. You should have at least 3 years of daily data linked together according to the methods of W.D. Gann. The weekly and monthly charts they put out are nearby continuous charts that cannot be used correctly due to incorrect highs and lows.

DOING CHARTS BY HAND

Making and keeping up charts by hand is very time consuming, but it does give you a special feel of the market that you would not otherwise get having prices updated automatically in a chart service or computer. If you feel that you have the necessary time for this activity, then the chart paper and printed data can be ordered from Gann Masters.

COMPUTER CHARTS

You can also buy a computer and obtain a charting software program which can do precision long term paper charts. There are two programs that can do this. One is the GannTrader by Peter Pich and the other is MAX:CHART by Infinity Data. You also need a source of long term data. There are many services available. CSI, Technical Tools, and Genesis are very popular. What ever data service you get, you must make sure that their data software has the ability to link the data into Gann continuous style format. If you are a serious Gann student, you will eventually want to go this way. MAX:CHART and GannTrader are available through Gann Masters. GannTrader lists for \$1295 and MAX:CHART for \$79.95. These programs are precision printer programs that can print Gann style charts. These programs give you the flexibility in setting up your charts. These programs produce large, beautiful, open, high, low close charts or high, low close charts. The charts can be up to 10 feet tall. The programs produce the charts in strips according to what size of Epson printer you have. The strips can be either 8 1/2" wide or 15" wide. You can select three grid sizes. 12x12, 10x10, or 8x8 lines per inch. Grids can be highlighted every 4th or 5th line. The programs require an IBM compatible computer with 640 RAM and an Epson or compatible printer. Both programs also have a screen technical analysis module that allows you to do much of the standard technical analysis that includes RSI, stochastics, moving averages, etc. GannTrader has the ability to draw planetary lines and the Gann squares directly on the screen. MAX:CHART does not have this ability.

NEW COMPUTER SCREEN PROGRAMS

In the last two years Omega Research has come out with SuperCharts and TradeStation, which are precision screen programs for MS Dos Windows. These programs are impressive. They can do many of the techniques necessary for Gann style trading. Most of the examples in this course are from these programs. The advantage they give you is the ability to do quick research on trading methods. Their disadvantages are they lack some of the essental timing tools and that they do not have update space to the right of the chart. Omega Research is working on these problems so the necessary tools will be available on a future program update. One of the most impressive features of these programs is their ability to display large amounts of data on the screen at one time in daily, weekly or monthly format. TradeStation can display data in any time format even including intraday. At this time, we feel that these two programs are the best screen programs available for the Gann Trader.

NUMBER NINE VIDEO CARD

Using a video card like Number Nine, you can view a much larger virtual chart on your computer screen which acts as a portal view on windows chart programs such as TradeStation or SuperCharts. The resolution of these video cards can go up to 1200 x 1600. The virtual screen can be up to 4 times your current screen size. This Number Nine video card used in combination with a 17" flat screen computer monitor is almost like trading on long term chart paper. We must warn you that trading on a computer just using a regular DOS chart program and regular VGA video card is not good and will sooner or later get you in trouble. Most of the 90% of traders that loose in the markets trade with this type of setup, using limited data and various oscillators. To be a successful Gann trader, you must know and trade the big picture with longer term charts.

GANN MASTERS BIG CHARTS

You can have Gann Masters make you the necessary charts to trade with. The charts sell for \$3.50 each either in daily, weekly or monthly format and are shipped via 2-day U.S. Priority mail. The daily charts are printed back 3 years and have update space for 1 year. The weekly charts are printed back 10 years and have update space for 2 years. The monthly charts are printed back for up to 30 years and have update space for 7 years. The charts are up-to-date on the day they are shipped. The charts are printed on continuous heavyweight 15" wide computer paper and are available in several commodities.

Commodity	Daily	Weekly	Monthls
Barley	.40	.80	2.00
British Pound	.20	.40	.40
Cattle	.20	.40	1.00
Cocoa	.10	.20	.40
Coffee	.40	.80	4.00
Copper	.20	.40	2.00
Corn	1	2	4
Cotton	.20	.40	1.00
Crude Oil	.40	.80	1.00
DMark	.0004	.0008	.0010
GNMA	4/32	8/32	32/32
Gold	2.00	4.00	8.00
Ieating Oil	.20	.40	.40
Hogs	.20	.40	1.00
Yen	.0020	.0040	.0040
Jnlead Gas	.20	.40	.40
Lumber	.40	1.00	2.00
VYSE	.20	.40	1.00
Dats	1	2	4
)J	.40	.80	1.00
latinum	2.00	4.00	8.00
Pork Bellies	.40	.80	1.00
Rapeseed	2	4	8
ilver	.10	.20	.40
loybeans	4	4	10
loymeal	.40	.80	1.00
loyoil	.20	.40	1.00
&P	.40	.80	1.00
ugar	.10	.20	1.00
Franc	.0020	.0040	.0040
Bills	.20	.20	.40
Bonds	4/32	8/32	32/32
Vheat	2	2	4

EXHIBIT 4.1 Scales to use for charts

CHAPTER 5

KNOW THE TREND

Trend is the most important thing you can know about the market.

The most important thing you can know about the market is its trend. The market can do three things:

- 1. Go up
- 2. Go down
- 3. Consolidate sideways

TYPES OF TRENDS

The market can have these three types of trends:

- 1. Short term
- 2. Intermediate term
- 3. Long term

ENTRY TECHNIQUE

Gann's entry technique for trading is as follows:

TO BUY

If the long term trend (monthly charts) is up, wait for the intermediate term trend (weekly charts) to break up out of a long running consolidation and then buy after the first short term (daily charts) drop turns up.

TO SELL

If the long term trend (monthly charts) of the market is down, wait for the intermediate term trend (weekly charts) of the market to break down out of a long running consolidation and then sell after the first short term (daily charts) rally turns down. To illustrate this technique look at Exhibit 5.1. The monthly lumber chart is in a long term uptrend since it had been making new yearly highs and lows since 1990. In Exhibit 5.2 you see a weekly lumber chart that had been in a downward consolidation since March of 1992. In September it made a new weekly high over the high it made in July of 1992 showing that the intermediate trend had broken up out of its consolidation range. In Exhibit 5.3 wait for the first daily short term trend to bottom out after its correction

and buy it which would have been on October 26, 1992. The move that then occurred was one of the largest moves that ever occurred in any commodity market.

LOW VOLATILITY ENTRY

In a situation like this you can put on your position with low volatility and close stops without too much risk. In this technique you are using Gann's rule of buying based upon the market making new highs on the monthly and weekly charts, but using the daily short term reactions to enter your positions. You'll never make consistent money in commodities unless you have the psychology to buy high and sell low. Don't be afraid do this because this technique produces some of the biggest profits from trends in the markets.

MARKET IN STRONGEST POSITION

The market is in the strongest direction when all three types of trends are in one direction as indicated:

- 1. Long term up
- 2. Immediate term up
- 3. Short term up with this technique, you will have all three trends in the same direction.



EXHIBIT 5.1 March 1993 Lumber monthly

WHAT CHARTS TO USE

To figure out the trend of the market, you should use:

- 1. Daily charts to tell short term
- 2. Weekly charts to tell intermediate term
- 3. Monthly and yearly charts to tell long term

MARKET ACTIVITY

The market will typically have low activity at the bottom and abnormally high activity at the top. Watch the average daily, weekly or monthly range to indicate if you're near a top or bottom. See Exhibits 5.1, 5.2, and 5.3 which clearly suggests this. The previous example was just a general technique and did not go into real detail regarding what makes a trend change. This will now be explained.

TIME FACTOR

The time factor is very important for showing a change in trend. When the trend of a market makes a change, the number of days of a reaction will increase over the last reaction. This is probably one of the first indications of a change of trend in a market. You need to keep an eye on the number of days reaction in both calendar and market trading days.



EXHIBIT 5.2 March 1993 Lumber weekly

CALENDAR DAYS

To count calendar days, you count all trading days plus weekends and holidays. It's very simple. It is much easier to use the Excel spread sheet for calendar time counts. This will be explained in a later chapter.

TRADING DAYS

To count trading days you must follow two very important rules: 1. Don't count inside days. Those are days in which the current trading day's high and low are inside the previous day's high and low . 2. If a market rallies stops and backs up over 50% of it's move, you start your count over. 3. To be a valid swing, the market must make a 2 day swing. That means that the market must have 2 days of consecutive newer highs or lows. 4. You must figure out the minimum amount of a move to count for a swing. In the case of TBonds, I determined the minimum was 1 full point. 5. The market will usually have approximately the same number of swings in its thrusts and reactions. There will be more on this in a later chapter. The market swings should be labelled for easy identification. In all uptrends mark all swing points. Mark all downswing points. There will be more in a later chapter concerning these swing numbers. It's best to buy or sell on number 3 tops and bottoms.



EXHIBIT 5.3 March 1993 Lumber daily

POINTS MOVE

In Exhibit 5.4, you will see that the points moved are closely related to the Fibonacci number series. In later lessons we will explain the points move in more detail.

1ST MOVE UP

In this example, TBonds bottomed on 6/23/92 and started to rally. They rallied 16 calendar days and 9 trading days for approximately a 3 point move.

2ND MOVE DOWN

The market topped on 7/10/92 and started its reaction. It declined 5 calendar days and 3 trading days. Notice that when a market only reacts 1- 3 market days, it is in strong position.

3RD MOVE UP

The market bottomed on 7/25/93 and rallied 32 calendar days and 19 market days, showing that the market was in still a very strong position. It exceeded the number of days of it's last rally.



EXHIBIT 5.4 June 1993 TBonds

4TH MOVE DOWN

The market topped on 8/13/93 and dropped 5 calendar days and only 1 market day. It still showed that the market was in a powerful uptrend.

5TH MOVE UP

The market bottomed on 8/17/92 and rallied 4 calendar days and 4 market days. In both cases this was less than the previous rally. This meant that the momentum was beginning to slow, a reason for caution.

6TH MOVE DOWN

The market made a top on 8/12/92 and fell 5 calendar days and 2 trading days. This reaction was slightly more than the previous reaction, still indicating that the momentum was declining.

7TH MOVE UP

The market bottomed on 8/26/92 and rallied 13 calendar days and 7 trading days.

8TH MOVE DOWN

The market topped on 9/8/92 and fell 14 calendar days and 8 trading days. This greatly exceeded the previous reaction indicating that the trend had changed due to an overbalancing of time. Now it's time to label the market for the downside. Change this 8th move down to the 1st move down in an intermediate downtrend. Get ready to sell short on the beginning of the 3rd down.

THE IMPORTANCE OF THE TIME FACTOR

The time counts of a market are very important. They tell you when a market is turning. Sometimes the turn is hard to detect. This is one way to determine a change in trend. There are other methods that you must use with this method to be more accurate. You will learn those later in other chapters.

TIME SHEETS

To know the accurate time count on a market is necessary. You should keep a written record on the market. See Exhibit 5.4 June 93 TBond chart in this chapter. Using the time sheet in Exhibit 5.5 you can keep a record of both calendar and trading units move of a market. This can be used on daily, weekly and monthly charts. This time sheet also has the ability to tract points move. Notice in this example how many of the calendar and trading days are Fibonacci numbers. It is quite amazing. Also notice on the points moves that very few moves exceeded 3 days. The 3 day figure is a natural Fiboancci timing number.

The Excel template that is available in this course has the ability to do calendar time counts. It will save you many hours of calculations. With the Excel spread sheet program, you can copy and make a time sheet on each individual commodity or stock that you are following. There are many other timing sheets that are available on this template.

TIME COUNT EXAMPLE

Description: June 93 TBonds Start Date: 6/22/92 End Date: 9/8/92 Calendar Units: Trading Units: 53 Points Move: 8 Major Trend: Up Intermediate Trend: Up Minir Trend: Down

No.	Start Date	Calendar Units	Trade Units	Points
1	6/23/92	16	9	3
2	7/14/92	32	19	5
3	8/17/92	4	4	1 1/2
4	8/26/92	13	7	3 1/2
5	7/10/92	5	3	1
6	8/18/92	5	3	1
7	8/21/92	5	1	11/20
8	9/8/92	14	8	3
1	9/8/92	14	8	3
2	9/23/92	12	7	2 1/2

EXHIBIT 5.5 Time count example

CHAPTER 6

MATHEMATICS

Mathematics is the basis of all forecasting in the markets.

U sing mathematics is an absolute necessity to trade the stock or commod ity markets successfully. The traders who master the art of trading the markets with mathematics will be successful. Those who don't will fail. It's as simple as that. Traders who rely on tips and rumors will eventually lose. By taking this course you are showing the desire to succeed by going beyond the what the normal trader will do. You are showing your desire to study, understand and apply mathematics to the market. It will take a lot of study for you to succeed, but you are on the right course. Those traders who think they can use computer trading programs alone with simple oscillators will fail. Many of these traders spend hundreds of hours of their valuable study time trying to make some definite pattern or way to use oscillators. They won't be able to do it. You need mathematics to succeed in the markets.

It looks so easy to trade with oscillators when you look back on past charts. You just sell when the stochastics is at the top and buy when it's on the bottom. It works some of the time, but sometimes it sets you up for a blood bath. For example, sometimes when the stochastics gets to the top, in an apparent sell mode, the market will take off and explode, leaving you with big losses if you shorted the market. The same thing happens when the stochastics gets to the bottom. If you buy when the stochastics is at the bottom, sometimes the market will fall out of bed giving you huge losses. Traders who follow only oscillators don't know when the market is approaching major or minor geometric angles or timing cycles. They have no idea of where the market might be heading. They will short the market when the stochastics oscillator is at the top and not know that the market is resting on a major geometric angle or time cycle. The market will then explode giving them huge loses. Check around with traders that use oscillators. You will find that they generally loose money in the markets. The only traders who consistently make money in the markets are traders who use mathematical methods of trading. These are based on the true mathematics behind the market caused by the vibration of numbers. Prior highs and lows and their interactive harmony waves and geometric angles are the real cause behind market move-
ments.

Oscillators can be used to successfully trade with, but only if they are used with other time and price trading techniques to support them. In this course we go over how displaced moving averages, stochastics and MACD can be used to trade the market mathematically. It is the only Gann way to use oscillators.

It's a puzzle why most traders don't use mathematics to buy and sell stocks and commodities and to forecast trends in the markets. It's very easy after you learn the mathematical trading techniques and it's 100% more reliable than using other techniques. It's also much more consistent. Mathematics is something that you can depend on. In this course, after you learn the principles of trading market mathematics you will never want to hear tips or rumors again. You will find that if someone offers their view of the market to you, you'll want to shut them out and not let them influence you. After you know the rules of mathematics behind the market you will find your sixth sense develops and many of the techniques you learned in this course will start relating to each other. Your mind will have a unique sense of where the market is headed.

In using mathematics for trading the markets, it is important to know that the market can go only two directions. It can go up or down or it can just move sideways. Prices can increase or decrease or just stay the same. They can do nothing else. We will use mathematics to figure out if the markets will go up or down. There are various methods to use to determine this. They involve the use of mathematical trend analysis and timing techniques developed by W.D. Gann.

THE CUBE

There are three measurements in a cube: length, width and height. We can use these measurements to figure out market movement. The market can be clocked in time in two different ways. One way is using trading days and the other is using calendar days. Many traders will use both as a check on each other. For example, a market might make a bottom and advance 90 market days to the next major top. That move would be 126 calendar days if you added the weekends. Most of the time the calendar day count will coincide with the market day count. The two together, will usually give you a time window. This window will contain 2 - 3 days where the market will top or bottom. In this example there are 90 trading days. Divide 90 trading days by 5 days to the week. You get 18 weeks. Weeks have two weekend days, so multiply 18 times 2 to get 36 weekend days. Add these 36 weekend days to 90 and you get 126 calendar days to calendar days is 1.4 which is close to the Gann Square of 144 or 10 times 1.44 is 144 a very important number.

Time measurements can be based on several techniques. One technique is using natural fixed numbers. These are the numbers that can be divided into the circle of 360 degrees. These are: 9, 18, 27, 36, 45, 72, 90, 120, 180, 270 and 360. Markets fall or rise by these exact numbers. The other technique is using variable numbers based on market highs, lows and ranges. If the market makes a high at 540 and a low of 410 the difference is 130. The markets often retrace one half of this or rise for 65 days.

The vertical or height movement of the market is price. Price calculations can use the same techniques as time measurements such as natural fixed numbers or variable numbers. For example, if the market makes a bottom at 90 it can rise 90 days and 90 points and square at that point and turn down.

A combination of height, width and length of a cube is volume of a cube. A market has to move up and down a certain number of vibrations to fill the volume of a cube before the market will change directions. Count the swings of a bull market and it should equal the swings of a prior bull market. See Exhibit 6.2. A bear market also should have the same number of swings as prior bear markets and they should be in proportion to prior bear markets and bull markets. A simple example is the Elliott wave counts of the market. Wave one is a count of 1, wave two down is 2, wave three up is 3, wave four down is 4, and wave five up is 5. Inside of these waves are smaller waves and the total wave count of one bull market should equal some prior bull market of the same commodity or stock.

A cube also has six sides. This means that the market will repeat itself every 6 intervals. That means you should check back every 6 days, 6 months, 6 years, or $(6 \times 10) 60$ years and the market will repeat itself. Be careful as the market has inversions in those repeat time cycles. That means for example 6 months ago if the market made a low, today it might invert and make a high instead. You should be watching for price patterns so you don't get caught in an inversion.

In geometry there are 3 basic shapes: the square, the circle, and the triangle. See Exhibit 6.4. The square, of course, represents time and price. The horizontal is time and the vertical is price. From the square we determine everything, both timing and price projection. If we put the 360 degree circle inside of the square and the three sided triangle inside the circle and the square this will give us the means to determine time and price points for forecasting the markets. As you remember, the fixed time points are from the circle of 360 degrees. The triangle helps us divide the circle into the three points of 120 degrees. The 120 degree points are some of the most important points of the circle. The Gann wheel or the Square of 9 is constructed from the square, the circle and the triangle.

We can use three different basic angles to determine time and price within the markets: the vertical, the horizontal and the diagonal line. The vertical is price, the horizontal is time and the diagonal is a combination of the two which is change of time and price. The horizontal and vertical lines divide the circle into the important 90 degree points. The triangle can then be used to divide the 90 degree points into 45 degree points. From these three geometric shapes, we get all the calculations in mathematics for time and price projections in the markets. In combination with the angles, we can use the squares of both odd and even numbers to get the cause behind the market movements. These numbers are actually part of the square when they are laid out according the Gann Square of 9.

CONSTRUCTING CHARTS PROPERLY

For geometric angles to work properly on charts, it is necessary for the charts to be constructed properly. If the charts are not constructed properly, then one small error can throw off your measurement and give you a loss in the markets. A very small error at the beginning can lead to a huge loss later on.

Now here are the rules for constructing proper charts from which to trade with. Construct daily charts with a vertical bar showing the open, high, low and close for the day. Allow no spaces for holidays or weekends. This is not to say that weekends or holidays are not important in regard to time measurements. Time goes on even though the markets stop trading. However, you don't have to put the blank spaces on your charts. You can use Excel spreadsheet as time calculator to count calendar days. In plotting of the market days, do not allow any days to be missed or omitted as this will later on cause big errors in your calculations. Date the bars at the bottom of the charts for market trading days. When doing time counts in the markets, it is necessary to keep track of important turning points using both trading days and calendar days. It is very important to know how many days, weeks or months the market is away from important highs and lows.

For spacing of your charts, the best is, of course using a 1 x 1 scale. That is, 1 cent in the price of corn for every 1 vertical square. This worked very nicely when Gann was living, but it does not work today. You will have to condense the prices in the squares to get them to fit on a chart. One way to know if you have the right price per square is to use the best fit method. Make charts up using 1 cent, 2 cent, 4 cent per square. It's nice to have a program like MAX:CHART to do this for you. It saves a lot of your time. After you have the three charts draw the 1 X 1 angle on them and see how the prices react on it. You will notice immediately which chart has the right scale, as it will just fit better with the angles. You will have to do this with all your daily, weekly and monthly charts. Each chart will have it's own scale based on its level of price movement. The pricing per square should be set up on the basis of so many cents per square. Set it up on the basis of the following even numbers: 1, 2, 4, 8 or 10. Use only these numbers for pricing per square. The means for example, price corn as 1, 2, 4, 8 or 10 cents per square. On a daily chart, you can get away with 1 cent per square, but on a long monthly chart, you may have to use 2, 4, 8 or 10 cents per square. These numbers keep your Gann angles correct with time and price.

The 1 x 1 scale is important, because the market moves according to dollars. Gann traded mostly grains which are set up properly to use the 1 x 1 scale. In corn, for example, your charts (daily, weekly and monthly) should be set up so 1 square equals 2 cents per bushel. Every 1 cent equals \$50 dollars. So 2 cents per square means that one square equals \$100. So the market can move according to time in a 1 to 1 ratio. One day can equal \$100 or one week can equal \$100 or one month can equal \$100. Most people set corn up so 1 square equals \$50 dollars. This works out in most cases, because the 2 x 1 angle which is a very strong angle works instead of the 1 x 1 angle on this scale. On any chart you use, you must convert it to use \$100 per square measurement. Gann angles will not work properly unless you do this. The best markets to use with the 1 x 1 angle are the grain and metal markets, because they are the easiest to convert to the \$100 per day scale.

If you have a chart service and you don't have the MAX:CHART or the GannTrader program, you can always figure out the scale mathematically. That is figure on a calculator that if the market made a high three years ago on a monthly chart, you can deduct 36 months x \$100 off the price of the commodity and figure where the 1 x 1 geometric angles should be.

It's important to use Gann style charts. Avoid nearby continuation style charts. Nearby continuation charts will not give you correct price projections, support, or resistance levels and will not give you good time projections points.

GEOMETRIC ANGLES

Geometric angles accurately measure time and price movements. There are 360 degrees in a circle and certain numbers in the circle are very important. In this course, you will learn which numbers are important. These numbers will indicate to you when important tops and bottoms are being formed. They will also indicate important support and resistance levels in regard to both time and price. You must study and practice with these numbers once you learn them to determine their importance.

Geometric angles are used to measure time and price movements because they are much easier than using addition, subtraction, multiplication or division in the markets, provided you use correct rules for drawing the angles correctly. Angles can correct mistakes in mathematics. For example, if you count across the bottom of your chart 90 squares across and 90 squares up and draw a 45 degree angle down from the left high point, the angle should intercept the 0 line at exactly 90 squares to the right. Thus angles, if drawn properly, will help you to correct mistakes in mathematics on your charts. Angles, will help you to know the position the market is in all the time. If you figure the market using mathematics such as addition, subtraction, multiplication or division and write these calculations down on paper, you will misplace and lose these calculations much of the time. Having the angles drawn on your chart allows you always to know the position the market is in all the time and you will always know when the market changes trend.

A mean-average can also be determined by taking the high and low of the day, week, month and dividing it by 2 to figure out the average price of the time period. This average price can be used alone and put into a moving average such as a 9, 18, 27, 36, 49, etc. day to determine the price trend. This mean average will give you an idea of how many dollars per day the market is moving in. Moving averages should be based on the number 9. This is the highest number in the system. All numbers repeat after the number 9. For example, look at the following number count:

> 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 add 9 to each of the above to get the next 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 add 9 to each of the above to get the next 20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29

GEOMETRIC ANGLES PROPORTIONATE TIME AND PRICE

Geometric angles accurately measure and divide time and price into proportionate parts. If a stock or commodity makes a low on a certain price for example 34, it has three dimensions of time and price. It can move sideways for 34 time units, it can move up for 34 price units, and it can move diagonally 34 time and price points from which it began. Accurate measurements can be taken from previous highs, lows, and the ranges in between. There is always proportion between previous highs, lows, and swings of the market.

90 SQUARE CHART

The 90 square pattern chart is very important to use in trend analysis. See Exhibit 3.3. To construct the 90 square chart do the following. First, you must determine the chart paper you are going to use and its scale. Once this is determined, take a piece of this paper at least 100 x 100 squares. Tape it to a table and tape a piece of plastic overlay to the chart paper. Use a permanent pen marker which is capable of drawing on plastic. Follow the following instructions:

1. On the plastic overlay draw a square 90 points across and 90 points down.

2. Draw a diagonal from the upper left corner to the lower right corner and from the bottom left corner to the upper right corner. This separates the square into 4 triangles. 3. Now where the diagonals intersected at the center of the square draw a horizontal and a vertical line. These lines separate the square into 4 smaller squares.

4. Now draw all symmetrical angles in the square from the corners intersecting the top, middle, and bottom of the other side of the square. Now you can draw the division angles intersecting the 1/4 points and 1/3 points of the other side of the square from each corner. For even more division you can use 1/8, 1/6 and 1/16 points.

5. Now draw the inner square, which are the lines that diagonally intersect the 1/2 points of each side of the square. This is one of Gann's most important discoveries. Many Gann traders omit this inner square. This is a big mistake. You will learn how to use the inner square as time goes on.

The square of 90 will be the basic pattern of the squares that you will draw. You must fully understand this square and how it is constructed and it's full meaning as time goes on. The Square of 90 can be used to supplement and replace all other squares. In this chapter we have included a square of 90.

The 90 degree square also helps you to understand the principles of Gann's mathematics. First you divide the number by the odd or even numbers such as 4 or 3. Divide the sides of the square first by 4 and then by 3 giving you 1/4, 1/2, 3/4, 4/4, 1/3, 2/3, 3/3. Then if necessary divide the sides even further by going one step further such as 1/8, 1/4, 3/8, 1/2, 5/8, 3/4, 7/8, 8/8, 1/6, 1/3, 2/3, 5/6, 6/6. What you are doing is multiplying the 4 and the 3 by 2 to get the next divisions of 8 and 6. To go even further you multiply by 2 again to get 18 and 12. Keep going out further to find the more precision numbers.

1 X 1 ANGLE (45 DEGREE)

The Gann angles are very important to understand. See Exhibit 6.1. The most important angle to draw is the 45 degree. In Comex gold, for example, this means that the market will move up at \$100 per day on a daily chart, \$100 per week on a weekly chart and \$100 per month on a monthly chart. The contract specifications on gold is 100 ounces. Therefore one dollar per ounce move equals \$100. This angle divides time and price into 2 equal parts, on into 2 triangles. In an uptrending market, as long as price stays above this angle, it is considered in strong position. You can buy it and put a stop right below this angle.

Another important signal is if you draw a 45 degree angle down from the top and the market gets above it but later gaps down under this line then it is a sell signal. A stop can be placed above the trend angle.

The amount of the stop you use with this trendline should be based on the level of prices and the volatility of the prices which is usually the same thing. Gold selling at \$350 per once will not need as much of a stop as gold selling at \$500 per once. If the stops are broken, then the market will usually go temporarily lower and you can also play the market that way.

Gann geometric angles almost always will stop a market from advancing or declining the first time prices hit them. Many times the market will go through the angles, if the wave pattern is not complete. If you don't understand wave pattern, you will not be able to effectively use the Gann angles. In this couse we will explain using wave patterns in a later chapter.

2 X 1 ANGLE (63 3/4 DEGREE)

The 2 x 1 angle is the second most important angle. It divides the space between the 45 degree angle and 90 degree angle. When a market is above this uptrending angle, it is in very strong position. If the market breaks this angle, then it will fall to the 45 degree angle.



EXHIBIT 6.1 Geometric angles

4 X 1 ANGLE (75 DEGREE)

When the market is above this uptrend steep angle, it is the very strong. This is many times the angle that blows off on and which you can make tremendous amounts of money with. The move that starts off from these angles usually comes from important major time cycles that hit the market. When the market breaks below this angle, then it will go to the next lower angle.

8 X 1 ANGLE (82 1/2 DEGREE)

When the market is above this angle, it is in a very strong position. It rarely happens on the daily chart, but more likely on weekly or monthly charts. When the market breaks below this angle, then it will go the 4×1 angle.

16 X 1 ANGLE (86 1/4 DEGREE)

The very steep angle is usually apparent only on weekly or monthly charts. For example in corn the market must rise 16 cents per week on a weekly chart or 16 cents per month on a monthly chart. Of course, as we have said before when this angle is broken, it will decline to the next lower angle the 8 x 1.

3 X 1 ANGLE (71 1/4 DEGREE) AND THE 3 X 2 ANGLE (54 3/8 DEGREE)

These are important angles to use on long term weekly and monthly charts after a market has been in a uptrend for a very long period of time. After the trend has been in duration for a long period of time and breaks these angles, the long term trend should change.

Note: The above angles are the ones you use when the market is above the 45 degree angle. When the market drops below the 45 degree angle, you use the next set of angles.

WHEN TO DRAW DAILY ANGLES

When do you draw the angles on the chart? You draw them only after the market has been in a downtrend for at least 3 days and then the market has a three day rally making higher tops and bottoms. The first angle you draw is the 1×1 . You next draw the 2×1 and then the 4×1 . If the market stays above the 4×1 , it will accelerate. If the market breaks the 1×1 then you should be begin using the bear angles below the 1×1 .

WHEN TO DRAW WEEKLY AND MONTHLY ANGLES

On the weekly and monthly charts you draw the 1 x 1 and 2 x 1 angles after the market has been in a down trend for at least 3 weeks or months and makes higher highs and lows for at least 2 weeks or months. Also use the 1/3 and 2/3 on the longer term charts.

DRAWING BEAR ANGLES

After the market makes a top using some of the rules for tops, which you will learn in this course, and it breaks the $1 \ge 1$ angle, you start using the next angles down which are the bear angles. The first angle down from the $1 \ge 1$ is the $1 \ge 2$ (26 1/2 degree). When prices drop to this angle the market will bounce off this angle and hold it for a while, however when the price eventually breaks it will go to the next angle down.

4 X 1 ANGLE (15 DEGREE)

The next angle down of support is the $4 \ge 1$ (15 degree). When prices hit this angle they will again rally, but eventually when the angle is broken prices will drop to the next angle.



EXHIBIT 6.2 - Swings of a bull market

8 X 1 ANGLE (7 1/2 DEGREE)

Then next angle of support is the $8 \ge 1$ (7 1/2). This is very often a very important angle of support. After a market has had a long term downtrend this angle is many times the angle that turns the market around back to an uptrend. This angle is very important to use with weekly and monthly charts.

1 X 16 ANGLE (3 3/4 DEGREE)

The next angle of importance is the 1×16 ($3 \times 3/4$ degree). When this angle is hit there is usually a small bounce as the market is in a weak position.



3 X 1 ANGLE (18 3/4 DEGREE) AND 3 X 2 ANGLE (35 3/4 DEGREE)

The 3 x 1 (18 3/4) and the 3 x 2 (35 3/4 degree) angles are very important to use on long term charts such as weekly and monthly charts. When you begin using this angle on the long term charts you will see it's importance as a timing angle.

WHEN TO USE BEAR ANGLES

After the market has made a top using the rules of this course and has broken a previous bottom and has declined for 3 days, weeks or months, you can begin drawing the downtrend bear angles.



EXHIBIT 6.4 - Three basic shapes

START WITH 1 X 1

Start by drawing the $1 \ge 1$ downtrend angle. When the market is below this angle, it is in a very weak position.

THEN USE OTHER BEAR ANGLES

When the market is below the $1 \ge 1$ down trending angle you can use many of the other bear angles below the $1 \ge 1$.

UNDER THE 2 X 1

The market is in the weak position when it is under the $2 \ge 1$ angle. That means it loses \$200 in gold per day, week or month. The next weakest position is when it is below the $4 \ge 1$ angle and the next weakest position is when it is below the $8 \ge 1$ angle.

GAPPING ABOVE THE 2 X 1 ANGLE

When the market is in a downtrend and crosses the $2 \ge 1$ angle to the upside, especially by gapping, it indicates it is in a stronger position and it has a chance to rally. This, of course depends on how long of a downtrend the market has been in.

MOVING ABOVE THE 1 X 1 ANGLES

When the market has been in a long trend downtrend and finally crosses the 1 x 1 angle it indicates that the market has changed it's direction. When the market has rallied at least 3 days on a daily chart, 3 weeks on a weekly chart and 3 months on a monthly chart, you can begin drawing uptrending bull angles on the chart again. The market is beginning to change into a bull market.

APPROACHING THE 2 X 1 ANGLE

After the 1 x 1 angle has been crossed, the first downtrending angle to draw is the 2×1 . Crossing this angle puts the market in a stronger position.

NEXT HIGH ANGLE IS THE 4 X 1

The next angle to draw is the $4 \ge 1$.

NEXT ANGLE IS THE 8 X 1

The next angle to draw is the $8 \ge 1$.

WHEN TO DRAW BULL ANGLES

When the market has crossed the $1 \ge 1$ and rallied to the $2 \ge 1$, it will run into selling and back off. When it gets up through the $4 \ge 1$ and the $8 \ge 1$ finally, it means the market is in very strong position once again. You should now draw the bull angles up from the bottom.

3 X 1 AND 3 X 2 ANGLES ON WEEKLY AND MONTHLY CHARTS

Keep in mind always to watch the $3 \ge 1$ and the $3 \ge 2$ angles on long term charts. When this angle is crossed many times the long term market direction has changed.

PRACTICE WITH ANGLES

Practice with all of these geometric angles over and over again. Knowing how to put these angles on your charts will tell you the position of the market at all times. The 1 x 1 angles should be put on all previous major highs and lows. The 1 x 1 should be drawn on all zero points. This means if the market either reaches a major low or a major high on a certain date a 1 x 1 angle should be drawn on 0 all the way up the chart. This angle can be calculated mathematically by figuring out where the angle will be coming up from so you don't have to have a chart going down to the point of 0. Also remember, for geometric angles to work effectively, you must know the wave position of the market. That is the secret as to when the market will stop on any one particular angle. To show you how important geometric angels are, we have constructed a Gann style monthly chart on December corn. That means we are taking December Corn from every year and linking them together. You cannot use the continuation charts put out by all the chart services. You must use charts created either by MAX:CHART or GannTrader for this to work. This chart is long term and started back in 1969. It is set up on the scale of 2 cents per grid, or \$100 per grid. We also set the division point at 1.20. This means that we know a major division line rests on one of the important major circle numbers 1.20. You should determine what major circle number is close to the commodity or stock you are studying. This represents a major resistance and support line. Now lets look at the chart.

DRAW FIXED NUMBER LINES

The first thing to do is draw the major circle division horizontal lines on the chart. These again are the numbers that can be divided by the circle. In this case we used the numbers of (1) 1.20. Notice how these 120 numbers divide the chart range into 3 equal parts. See the divisions on the charts and how the corn market breaks on these important lines. You can also divide the chart up into 60 square intervals which would give us the additional numbers of (5) 1.80, (6) 2.40 and (7)3.60. I have drawn these lines with dashes to distinguish them from the 45 square lines. All of these lines are fixed numbers and are very important.

DRAW TOP AND BOTTOM OF RANGE LINES

You should also draw horizontal lines for both the top of the range 4.00 and the bottom of the range (9) 1.12. All major and minor angles will square when they intersect these lines.

DRAW ALL 1 X 1 ANGLES

The next thing to do is to draw all $1 \ge 1$ angles from all major tops and bottoms. When the market makes a bottom or top, you can draw the following angles.

a) Draw the first 1 x 1 angle from the top or bottom on the exact price point.

b) If it is either a high or low you can draw a zero point $1 \ge 1$ angle from the bottom. To do this you must calculate where the angle must come up at the base line. Therefore on the first low that based at 1.12, the zero $1 \ge 1$ angle line comes up off the base line over to the right 112 spaces.

c) If it is a low you can draw a 1 x 1 angle from the top of the range down to the bottom of the range.

d) If it is a high you can draw a 1 x 1 angle from the bottom of the range up to the top of the range.

e) Draw 1 x 1 angle up and down from the midpoint under the high or low.

f) All angles can bounce off the top or the bottom of the total range.

When these angles hit either the top or bottom of the range, or midpoints of ranges, the midpoint of the entire range, or if they intersect each other, price and time will square and the market will reverse.

Now let's get into the real drawing of the $1 \ge 1$ angles. Lets draw all the $1 \ge 1$ angle types off of the following major highs and lows:

10) from the low of 1.12 of Mar. 1969.

11) from the low of 1.12 of Sept. 1971

12) from 3rd wave high of 3.33 on Aug 1973

13) from the 5th wave high of 4.00 on Oct. 1974

14) from the C wave bottom of 1.90 on Aug 1977

15) from the 3rd wave high of 3.29 Jul. 1979

16) from the 5th wave high of 3.96 on Apr 1981

17) from the C wave bottom of 2.14 on Oct 1982

18) from the C wave top of 3.76 on Aug 1983

19) from the 5th wave bottom of 1.51 on Dec 1987

DEC CORN EXAMPLE

Now lets explain what you see on this chart. Almost every time a major range low angle ran up to the top or the opposite a high range angle line ran down to the bottom, a major yearly cycle high or low occurred.

When ever two cycle lines intersected there was a major cycle change. Also where two cycle lines intersected became temporary support or resistance.

The high of the range of this market is 4.00 and the low of the range is 1.12. The total range of this market is 144 squares or \$1440 dollars. Dividing

the range by 2 gave the center of gravity of this market - 2.54. You can see how the market oscillated around this key line.

When an angle rose and price was above it, gave support to the market declines and when an angle fell and price was below it, gave resistance to the market rallies.

Geometric angles will hold only when the 5th, 3rd or C wave of a market is complete. If the wave pattern is not complete, then the angle will eventually break. This is why so many people lose money trading the Gann angles. They do not know what they are doing. If the market is falling and it lands on the 1 x 1 angle and it is only in its 3rd wave down of a 5th wave move, it may bounce off the 1 x 1, but on the next down it will penetrate the angle and go to the next angle until the market completes the fifth wave down. When the market does complete the 5th wave, then and only then can you look for the nearest Gann angle for support. This is one of Gann's secrets, which he failed to reveal in his courses. You must know not only the Gann angles, but also know where in the wave pattern you are. This tells you the direction of the market. The Gann methods only tell time and price support points.

The geometric angles from major highs and lows are very important as you can see on the monthly Corn chart in this chapter, Exhibit 3.5. Every timing low or high and all resistance levels are the result of these geometric angles. They are so important that you must super impose these important geometric angles on your weekly, daily and even hourly charts. These are the real angles that the market trades on, and you must know where they are on all of your charts. In the December corn chart the market moves \$100 per month on a 1 x 1 angle or \$1200 per year. On a weekly chart the same angle is moving at \$1200/52 or \$23.04 per week. On a daily chart the market is moving at \$1200 / (52 weeks x 5 trading days - 8 holidays) or \$4.76 per day.

Follow the chart from the beginning and you will see how time and price squares with the Gann geometric angles.

1) The first 1 x 1 angle from the low of 1.12 on Mar. 1969 squared with the top of the range exactly between the time of the major double top of 1980.

2) The second 1 x 1 angle from the double bottom of 1.12 of Sept. 1971 squared with the range top two months from the timing high of 1983.

3) The first 1 x 1 angle from the low of 1.12 hit the midpoint of the range at 2.54 and this was the timing low of 1975.

4) The second 1 x 1 angle from the low of 1.12 hit the midpoint of the range at 2.54 and this was the timing high of 1976.

5) The 1 x 1 angle off the 3rd wave high in 1973 came down from the top and hit the range low which was the exact timing low of 1982.

6) The fifth wave high of 1974 came down hit the range low which was the timing low of 1986.

If you continue to look at the angles, you will find that almost all major

highs and lows were the result of either an angle hitting the range top or bottom or intersecting with another angle.

REPEAT CYCLES OF THE MARKET

As you learned in this chapter the market repeats every six years, months, weeks or days. In this case let's break it down into every three years. Lets look at the repetitions (Remember the market can invert some years - in other words the market makes make a major high instead of a low):

20) Major low 1971

21) Major high 1974

22) Major low 1977

LENGTH OF THE MARKET

Now lets look at the length of the market:

1) From 1969 we went into a 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 up to the top of 1974.

2) From the low of 1974 we went into an a, b, c down to 1977.

3) From 1977 we went into an a, b, c bear market rally into the top in 1980.

4) From the top of 1980 we went into another a, b, c pattern down to 1982.

5) From the low of 1982 we went into another a, b, c rally up to the top in 1983.

6) From the top of 1983 we went down in a 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 down to the low of 1986.



EXHIBIT 6.5 - Dec corn example

CHAPTER 7

ELLIOTT WAVE THEORY

Elliott waves should be a necessary part of your overall trading method.

The Elliott Wave Theory uses a very complicated set of rules that are subject to change anytime. You will find that very few Elliott wave traders can ever agree on what wave pattern they are in, until it's all over. Two Elliott wave technicians can look at a chart and both of them can see two different patterns. This is perhaps why Gann did not get into the complex reading of waves. He did, however, understand simple waves and how to read and use them with his time and price points. This chapter expalins a practical way to use the Elliott Wave Theory in conjunction with other Gann time and price points.

About 50% of the Elliott Wave techniques are simple and clear and the other 50% are complex, too difficult and subject to differing interpretation among Elliott wave technicians. For the Gann trader, the best approach is to use the 50% that are simple and clear. Elliott waves should be a necessary part of your overall trading method. Gann time and price points tell you where the market has been and were it is going. The Elliott Wave Theory tells you where you are on the road map. It can be used very nicely in conjunction with the other Gann time and price points. The Elliott Wave Theory used alone, will get traders into big trouble as they are constantly relabeling waves to fit the pattern that they currently see. The Elliott wave approach we recommend will work most of the time in conjunction with other Gann rules and help to put the whole puzzle together as to where you are in the overall trading structure of the market.

USING GANN RATIOS

There are actually two types of ratios that can be used with the waves. They can be Fibonacci or Gann ratios. You should check the market you are trading in to determine which of the two types of ratios the market is best working with. The following is a listing of the differences in the ratios. Gann ratios are determined by basically dividing full numbers into halves and thirds as far down as you need to. Here are the ratios used: Divide the number by 2 or 4 or 8 or 16 and divide by 3 or 6 or 12. By doing this we get the following as

compared to the Fibonacci ratios used by most Elliott wave traders:

BASIC RATIO DIFFERENCES

Gann .25 - .33 - .50 - .66 - .75 - 1.00 - 1.25 - 1.33 etc. Fibonacci .382 - .618 - 1.00 - 1.382 - 1.50 - 1.618 etc.

As you can see the Gann ratios are very similar to the Fibonacci ratios used by Elliott wave traders.

TWO BASIC WAVES

Elliott waves can be classified into two basic parts (See Exhibit 7.1):

1) The impulse pattern that is in the main direction of the market that ends at a Gann time and price level

1) The corrective pattern that the market will retrace to some important Gann time and price point.

THE IMPULSE PATTERN

Impulse patterns consist of usually five waves in the main direction of the market. That main direction of the market can be either up or down.

1) The first wave of an impulse move is usually not very strong as traders are unsure of where they are in the market.

2) After the first wave runs up to the top of wave 1, it will pull back usually very quickly and violently and test the bottom and hold without making a new low. This is wave 2. Traders are still bearish and are short and thinking the market is still going lower. Some may even add to their shorts.



Most short traders will now have their stops above wave 1.

3) The beginning rally of wave 3 is usually very slow and will finally make it up to the top of wave 1. Traders are still bearish and many have added to their short positions. There are a large amount of stops above wave 1. The rally of wave 3 continues and pushes above wave 1 where there are a tremendous number of stops. When these stops are hit the market explodes and many times gaps up because of order imbalances. The gaps are a main indication that you are in wave 3. The volume increases and many other traders get on the bandwagon and start to buy. Traders that were long at the bottom start to add to positions. Traders that were short that got stopped out decide that market is also going higher and they take long positions. At this time, the majority of traders are now long and the market is in a main trend up. Wave 3 is always longer than at least one of the waves 1 or 2 and it can never be the shortest wave of the three.

4) Finally the buying of wave 3 starts to subside and profit taking starts to come in. Traders who were long at the bottom decide to take profits, or they might put in close stops to protect their profits. This causes a general orderly pull back which is wave 4. Notice the differences between the wave 2 pull back and wave 4 pull back. Wave 2 was fast and violent and wave 4 was orderly. Gann knew what wave the market was in, because of the wave's characteristics. Most traders are still bullish in wave 4 and many take this opportunity to add to their positions and many that missed the entire move, decide to enter the market in wave 4. Wave 4 should never come down under the peak of wave 1 in cash markets, but it can come down 10 - 20% under wave 1 in futures markets, because of car-



rying and storage charges.

5) The market now starts up in its wave 5. It does not have the power that wave 3 had because of the stop buying and new initial longs being taken. When the market hits the top of wave 3, it usually goes through, but not with a lot of enthusiasm. The rally is very lackluster. The prices make a new high and that is the top of wave 5 and the market tops out.

CORRECTION PATTERNS

Correction patterns usually consist of three waves. They come in two different categories: the simple correction and the complex correction. If wave 2 is a simple correction then expect wave 4 to be a complex correction. If wave 4 is a simple correction then expect wave 2 to be a complex correction.

THE SIMPLE CORRECTION

The simple correction that which has only one pattern which is the zigzag correction. This is an a, b, c correction. Wave b will correct 1/2 - 3/4 of wave a. If it exceeds that correction then it is not a simple correction, but a complex correction. Wave a will always have a 5 wave pattern in the direction of the correction. Wave c will go below wave a. Wave c will be equal to wave a or 1.5 to 2.5 times of wave a. The way to know if you are in a zigzag correction is to determine if wave a has a five wave pattern.

THE COMPLEX CORRECTION

The complex pattern consists of three different patterns:

a) The flat correction where each wave is equal in length



b) The irregular correction where wave b makes new high then drops to the beginning of wave a or below it. Wave b equals 1.125 - 1.25 of wave a. Wave c equals 1.5 - 2.5 of wave a.

c) The triangle is where there are 5 subwaves of a, b, c, d, and e in the correction. Triangles are usually associated with wave 4. When the market breaks out of the triangle, it usually does it with a big thrust in the same direction as wave three.

USING WAVE MEASUREMENTS

Wave 1 is the base measurement. Wave 2 is usually equal to .25 .33 .50 (most common) .66 .75 of wave 1 Wave 3 is usually equal to 1.25 1.33 1.5 1.66 (most common) 1.75 2.0 2.5 2.66 (most common)



2.75 3.00 3.25 3.33 3.50 3.66 3.75 4.00 4.25 times wave 1 Wave 3 is smaller than wave 1 only 5% of the time Wave 3 is 1.66 - 1.75 of wave 1 50% of the time Wave 3 is 1.00 - 1.50 of wave 1 15% of the time Wave 3 is 1.75 - 2.66 of wave 1 30% of the time Wave 3 is greater than 2.66 only 8% of the time Wave 4 is equal to .25 .33 (most common) .50 (most common) .66 .75 of wave 3 Wave 4 is .25 of wave 3 only 15% of the time Wave 4 is .33 - .50 of wave 3, 60% of the time Wave 4 is .50 - .66 of wave 3 only 15% of the time Wave 5 is equal to 1.25 1.33



1.5
1.66 (most common)
1.75
2.0
2.25
2.33
2.50 of wave 1.
When wave 3 is less than 1.75 of wave 5 then wave 5 will equal
.66
.75
1.0 (most common)
1.33
1.5 (most common)
1.66 of the bottom to the top of wave 3.

ANGLE PROJECTION

Gann projection of wave 5. After wave 4 has ended and wave 5 starts draw a Gann angle that connects wave 2 and 4. Now draw that same angles on the top of wave 3 to project the top of wave 5. (See Exhibit 7.8)

If wave 4 breaks key Gann angles or retracement points then the chances of a big 5 wave rally will be slim. How much it breaks determines the strength of wave 5.

You can use Gann angles and retracement levels to protect profits on wave 3 as a stop. (See figure 7.9)

When waves complete themselves on key Gann time and price points you can take action with a trade.



It is necessary to look at the monthly, weekly and daily charts to determine where you are in the big picture.

% OF PRIOR WAVE

All waves are a Gann % of the prior wave. For example wave 3 is the following of wave 2 the prior wave:

Ratios to use with short term (3 months) and intermediate wave (3 months - 12 months).

.25
.33
.50
.66
.75
1
1.25
1.33
1.50
1.66
1.75
2.0
2.25
2.33
2.50
2.66
2.75
3.00
3.25
3.33
3.50
etc.
Ratios to use with waves over 12 months:
.10
.20
.30
.40
.50
.60
.70
.80
.90
1.00
1.10
1.20
1.30

1.40 1.50 1.60 1.70 1.80 1.90 2.00

You will find that each stock or commodity has its own characteristics and what ratio it used before, it will use again. Go back and check the records and you will find this statement is true.

ORTHODOX TOP OR BOTTOM

You will find that after a stock or commodity has made its top, many times the market will make an irregular high or low stopping out many traders. In most cases the market will run a certain percent above the prior wave. These are for short and intermediate term waves:

4% 6% 8% 10% 12% 14% 16% 18% 20% 22% 22% 24% 26% 28%

Each market will have it own characteristics, check back on past records to see that the market has done before.

For long term waves use

1% 2% 3% 4% 5% 6% 7% 8%

9%

Check back on a certain market to see what it has done before to find its normal orthodox percentage move of the prior wave.

USING EXTREME HIGHS AND LOWS

It is important that you use the extreme highs and lows in calculating all moves. Do not use closes as many Elliott wave technicians do. Gann always used the exact extreme high or low to calculate the correct move.

ELLIOTT WAVE EXAMPLE - DEC 91 CORN

Now lets look at an example which is the Dec Corn Exhibit 7.13. The market topped out in the beginning of March and began to fall. Wave 1 moved down approximately 15 cents. Each square equals one cent of corn in this example or \$50.00. The market bottomed out on the bottom of wave 1 down and then had a violent move up. This meant that traders that were long felt that the market would go up. They bought and added to long positions. They put sell stops below wave 1 bottom. The market did not make a new high and then started to falter. That was an indication the market might fall. Since wave 2 rallied more than 75% of wave one, it had to be an complex correction. What actually developed was a flat wave pattern. All waves being equal. The market quietly declined until it hit the bottom of wave 1. When it got through wave 1, the market gapped down two different times with extreme weakness, indicating long were getting stopped out and other people were shorting. Even the longs that got stopped out started to short to get their money back. The market declined quickly. It dropped 26 cents to the bottom of wave 3. This equaled 1.75 of wave 1, the most popular count of wave three. The market then went into a simple correction since wave 2 was a complex correction earlier on. After the ABC correction completed itself, corn then dropped to new lows down to wave 5 to make a bottom. Since wave 3 is less than 1.75 of wave 5 then wave 5 will probably equal 100% of the top to the bottom of wave 3 which was 28. Actual count of wave 5 was 30 cents.

In this example a protective stop for shorts could be placed above the 3 X 1 line coming off the top of wave 2. The 1 x 3 coming off of the exact top also restricts the wave 4 rally. The 2 x 1 coming off the bottom of wave 1 and wave 3 also tells where the wave 5 objective was.



EXHIBIT 7.13 Dec 91 corn example

CHAPTER 8

THE TIME FACTOR

Gann said that time is the most important factor.

The most important factor in determining market movements is time. Time tells the trader when the market stops its trend and goes the other direction. If you know the time changes in the markets, your chances of success will be increased many times.

All time is determined from the circle of 360 degrees:

Divide the circle by 4 parts and you get: 360 270 180 90
You can break these numbers down even further: 45 22.5 11.25
Divide the circle by 3 parts and you get: 360 240 120
You can break these numbers down even further: 60 30 15 7 3.5

3 Times the odd and even numbers and doubling them is very important. Take 3×3 (the odd low number) and double them to get the following important numbers:

Take 3 x 4 (the even low number) and double them to get the following important numbers:

The number 9 is very important as it is the number that ends your count before you start over, see the following:

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 add 1 to get the next set 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19

The number 7 is also very important. Many counts start over after the number 7. Also the following multiples of the number 7 are important:

Minor time trend changes will therefore occur every: 3.5, 7, 9, 11.25, 14 15, 18, 21, 22.5, 24, 28, 30, 35, 36, 42, 45, 48, 49, 54, 60, 72, 90, and 96 days

Intermediate time trend changes will therefore occur every: 120, 144, 180, 240, 270, 288 and 360 days.

Long term time trend changes occur every 3.5, 7, 11.25, 15, 22.5, 30, 45, 60, and 90 years.

BUILT UP FORCES

If a market moves sideways for several months the accumulated force of volume will push the market rapidly to catch price up with time. Watch carefully for breakouts out of long sideways ranges. When markets breakout they will often run up to 49 days rapidly in one direction.

HARMONICS

When you find what long term time cycle a commodity is working in you can easily see the harmonics of the moves. For example on a 90 year cycle every 9 years will give a good harmonic high or low. On a 60 year cycle every 6 years will give a good harmonic high or low. This is another check to see what time cycle you are really in.

Check back on the harmonic time cycle years to determine what the market might do today. For example, if you are following a 90 year cycle, pull up charts every 9 years back, to see what the market did in the past on these harmonic years. Many times the market will make an exact high or low on the exact date of the prior year.

MONTHLY MOVES

Markets often move on the basis of one year. Therefore it is important to watch divisions of the year. Divide the year into 4 parts. Watch for changes on the end of 3 months, 6 months, 9 months and 12 months. Many changes occur between the 9 and 12 month period.

PRICES MOVE FASTER THE HIGHER THEY GO

As prices get higher, they will move faster and faster and have wider swings. When prices drop to new lows, they will have lower volume and smaller ranges. If you look at the circle charts in a later chapter and the angles that extend out from the center, you will notice that prices have wider swings between the angles as you go out from the center.

CHANGES IN TREND

The trend of a market is determined by three different factors either by breaking angles, tops or bottoms. When these are broken important time factors should be nearing their end. When a daily point is broken the market will often move 3 to 10 days. When a weekly market is broken the market will often move only 3 weeks. When a monthly trend is broken the market will move at least 3 months. When a yearly trend is broken the market may move up to 3 years in the other direction.

LOST MOTION

When a market is very slow, it may not have enough motion to get to a time and price point. On the other hand when a market is very fast, it will exceed the time and price points temporarily.

MARKET IN STRONGEST OR WEAKEST POSITION

The market is in its strongest position when its price equals the square of its time. When the market tops at 54 and drops 54 days, 54 weeks or 54 months it will square itself. You can expect the market to reverse if it stops at that level and moves sideways for 3 to 4 days and goes the other way. When the market gets above the square price and does so with velocity you can expect a big move in the same direction. If you use trend lines which are created as time lines, they will tell you what position the market is in. If you have the market set up in a perfect dollar ratio, for example 1 square = \$10, 100, 1000 etc. then the 45 degree angle when broken will indicate a major change of trend.

LIFE OF THE CONTRACT

When you know the exact life of a futures contract you can also break that cycle up into odd and even numbers. You will find important time changes occur during the intermediate divisions of a contract.

DIVISIONS OF THREE, FIVE AND SEVEN

The third, fifth and seventh period of anything very often is a major trend change and the market goes the other way. Watch carefully for 3, 5 or 7 days, 3, 5 or 7 weeks, 3, 5 or 7 months or 3, 5, or 7 years. When a market has moved up quite a lot and slows down watch for the 3,5 or 7 day for a change in trend.

OVERBALANCING OF TIME AND SPACE MOVEMENTS

Time and space movements can be used in conjunction with time factors to determine changes in trend. For an example of space movement - when a contract of corn has been dropping 14 cents on prior reactions and this reaction it drops 20 cents, look for a change of trend. For an example of time movements - when a contract of corn has been dropping 12 days on prior reactions and this time it drops 23 days, look for a change of trend. These changes are very important to watch. They can give you an early warning signal that a change in trend is beginning to happen.

SQUARE OF SPACE AND TIME

When the market goes up 30 cents in corn in 30 days then the market has squared itself. The squaring of a time or bottom when using the odd and even circle numbers will many times indicate a major change of a time cycle.

DURATION OF TIME MOVEMENTS

Go back and check how long a market normally moves. For example, some markets make a practice of moving at least 5 months. You can break the normal movement of a market into 4 parts to determining when it might end. The fastest part of the move will begin in the 3 or 4 section.

GEOMETRIC ANGLES

Geometric angles will tell you what time cycle the market is moving in. When a market breaks an important angle the market will start a new time cycle. It is important to note that the new time cycle may start a different time than the one ending.

CYCLES OF THE MARKET

Check back on the market you are studying it to see what cycles it normally trades in. What cycles it has been trading in will be the same as today. These numbers give you approximations of where the market stops and starts in its time cycles.

DEC CORN (EXAMPLE) SECTIONS

Now let's look at the December Corn example. (See Exhibit 8.1) The entire contract is printed from Beginning to End. The contract is divided into odd 4 and even 3 sections (see the vertical words BEGIN OF LIFE OF CONTRACT SECTION 3 and 4. Notice, right after the beginning of each section you can draw horizontal lines on top and bottom of the range for the first few days. When it breaks out of the range the contract will usually continue in that direction. In many cases the trend started will continue to the next same section line. The SECTION 4 will go to the next SECTION 4 and SECTION 3 will go to the next SECTION 3. If you combine both sections you will get cross currents of two different trends. Some times you will get two confirmations of the same trend. See the dates of SECTION 4 in late July and SECTION 3 at the beginning of September. Both trends were pointed down.

45 DAY CYCLE

The 45 DAY CYCLE will usually give you a clear indication of the direction of the market. When prices drop down into a 45 DAY CYCLE the prices should then rise. See the 45 DAY CYCLE on October 12. When prices go up into a 45 DAY CYCLE the price will then turn down after the cycle hits. See the 45 DAY CYCLE high on December 14.

DIVISIONS OF 3, 5, 7 DAYS/WEEKS

The market will usually run up or down and stop on 3, 5, or 7 days or weeks. Each commodity has its own characteristics. In the December Corn example

the market dropped 7 weeks down into a market low on August 10 and November 13. The market rallied 7 weeks into the high of April 20. The market dropped down 5 weeks into the date of October 14 and December 30. When the market runs up into the 3, 5, or 7 days or weeks watch the market carefully to see if it is running out of steam. If it starts to turn the trend will usually go the opposite direction and reverse.

SQUARE OF SPACE AND TIME

When the market makes an important high or low it will square itself with time in the future in days, weeks or months. In this example the market topped at an important high on May 29 at 285. That means that the market will cycle 285 days, weeks or months from that point. You can also divide those numbers into 10 equal parts to get the harmonics sections of the market. See in this example the harmonic points labeled 1/28 through 10/28. Notice near the end at points 9/29 to 10/28 the market ran out of downward pressure and started to rally indicating an end to the long 285 day downtrend.

OVERBALANCE SPACE AND TIME

In this example the market started to show signs of a bottom on November 23 when the market rallied 14 cents in 21 days which is more than the previous rallies. This again happened on July the 19 when the market rallied 36 cents in 20 days indicating the end to the 285 day downtrend.

DEC CORN HARMONICS 60 YEAR CYCLE

The example of the 60 year harmonic cycle for corn is very important. Divide 60 years by 10 to get the 6 year harmonic cycles. Now take the year of 1993 and go back every 6 years. Print out the charts and overlay them on top of each other. You will find many times that lows or highs occur the same time periods. When you find every year that has a low exactly on the same area you have a winner. See the lows that occur every harmonic year between February and March. That is a trade that you can bank on. You will see that in other parts of the charts that inversions occur. That means that some years may have a low at that time period and other years may have a high. You can use this to your advantage. When the market does this it will usually go the opposite direction. So when it drops into a low buy and when it rallies into a high, sell it. It can be very profitable. As always use this with all your other Gann tools you have learned in this course.



EXHIBIT 8.1 December Corn Example

CHAPTER 9

SUPPORT & RESISTANCE

Markets move between support and resistance.

In trading the markets, it is very important to know the important force of both support and resistance. Every top or bottom in the market has some relation to some prior top or bottom and it is mathematically based on that prior top or bottom. By using trend lines and time cycles with support and resistance levels, you can do much better in trading and know where to put your stop loss orders.

RANGE

Take the high price and the low price and divide it by odd and even or 3 or 4. If you want to go down another degree divide it by 6 or 8 or even 12 or 16 levels. When the market approaches these levels of support or resistance and is starting to show a possible change of trend, it is a place to either buy or sell. The halfway points are always the most important. The market will many times hold at these levels for 3, 5 or 7 days, 3, 5 or 7 weeks or 3, 5 or 7 months and give you a chance to buy or sell it. It depends on if the trend is minor, intermediate or major.


HOW THE MARKET TOPS OR BOTTOMS

When the market moves up to a resistance level or comes down to an important support level its volume and price activity will slow down for several days. The price pattern is usually in a narrowly traded range. Watch the activity closely for a change in trend. It will usually make its move in the direction that it will be going. You should then go with the trend. (See Exhibit 9.1 and 9.2)

HIGHEST PRICE EVER

You can also divide the highest price the stock or futures ever sold at. Divide it by odd or even numbers to get the support and resistance levels. Again the halfway points are the most important.

If the market ever breaks through it's all time high, the market has no overhead resistance and it many times surges with tremendous strength and volume. Whenever the market breakout out into new highs go with the trend as there is no resistance. In the stock market it is a profitable practice to buy the stocks that are making new highs as these are the strongest stocks in the market.

LOWEST PRICE EVER

You can take odd and even multiples of the lowest price the market ever sold at for support and resistance levels. If the markets all time low is 133 then multiply it by 2 to get 266. If that is in the current price range area, then use the number. If it's not in the current price range then multiply 133 by 3 or 4 to get the next price levels.

If that market ever breaks into all time lows it usually is a good idea to short the market and go with the weak trend. The market is in its weakest position when it is making new lows. Everyone that is long the market has a loss and is anxious to get rid of their position when ever the market rallies. Many times the market does not rally when it makes new lows, it just goes lower. Many longs panic and get out of the market and the prices even go lower.

PENETRATION

When a market is very fast, it will often penetrate a resistance level temporarily and then bounce back. This often happens at the 50% midpoints of the market. If the market stays above the 50% market, then their is a good chance the market will hold and start to rally when time factors turn up.

PAST PERFORMANCE

Study past action of important support and resistance levels to determine what it will do in the future. The best past action to study is previous same price levels. Also study previous same harmonic time areas such as every 6 years, if the market is following a 60 year cycle. If this is a 45 day cycle low, then you also need to study previous 45 day cycle lows to see how they bottomed.

PREVIOUS FUTURES CONTRACTS HIGH/LOWS

It is very important to know when the market has gone through a previous contract high or low. For example, December 1992 Corn vs December 1993 corn. When prior bottoms or tops are crossed, look for a change of trend. When a previous top which was resistance is crossed, it then becomes support. When a previous bottom which was resistance is penetrated, it then becomes resistance.

OPENS/CLOSES

Opens and closes are important to determine support and resistance levels. In strong bull markets there are never more than 2 days, weeks, months prices closing lower than the open. The market comes back to close higher than the open and continues its trend. In bear markets there will never be more than 2 days, weeks, months prices closing higher than the open. The market will usually close lower than the open to continue its trend. Watch the opens and closes especially near important support and resistance areas.

BEGINNING TIME RULE

Watch carefully at the beginning of the year in January or in the mid point of the year at July for changes of trend. Watch the first 3, 5, 7 days of the period. If the trend is sideways for those few days and then breaks out, go with the trend. That is the direction of the market. The trend started then will usually last from 3 - 4 months.

EXTREME HIGH OR LOW PRICE

Watch the years of extreme high or low prices. These years are very important for support and resistance and determine future movements usually in some important harmonic time measurement. Look carefully at the last number of the year. For example, many times a market will make highs or lows with the same last digit. For example the market might make highs on years that end with 9. See the years 1969, 1979 and 1989. If the market made highs on those years then look for the year 1999 to be a high also. Every market is different so always check back on your long term historical data.

LONG SIDEWAYS MOVEMENTS

Watch these time periods carefully. The market is usually just marking time while it squares out some prior top or bottom. When the market breaks out of this range, it usually is a major change of trend.

DEC CORN (EXAMPLE) SUPPORT AND RESISTANCE LEVELS

In Exhibit 9.3 of December Corn we take the all time high of 400 less the all time low of 112 3/8 to get a range of 287 5/8. If you notice this is close to the Gann number of 288 or $2 \times 12 \times 12$. The halfway point between the all time high and low is 256 which we have drawn a horizontal line on the chart.

ALL TIME HIGH

In all markets you should find the all time high and divide it either by odd 3 or even 2 or 4 to get important support and resistance areas. In this example we divided it by 3 to get 266 which is a price in our trading range. Notice how the price of 266 keeps a top on this market. You can use this line as a resistance area.

ALL TIME LOW

You should also multiply the all time low by either odd 3 or even 2 or 4 to get important support and resistance areas. In this case the all time low was 112 3/8. Multiply this by 2 to get 224 3/4. This area of support on this chart occurred two times in November and in July. This became the real support of the overall corn market through this contract.

SIDEWAYS RANGE

The all time high divided by 3 to get 266 and the all time low $112 3/8 \times 2$ to get 224 3/4 became the major support and resistance for this entire contract. See how important it is.

HIGH/LOW RANGES

Inside the contracts movement you can see the ranges and divisions thereof. The long sideways range that occurred from January to July was 26 points from top to bottom. The smaller range from August to November was exactly half of this 13 points. Watch carefully for breakouts of long sideways ranges. If it happens with gaps and big volume, it can mean a big move is coming.

ANGLES

Support and resistance lines and halfway points can often be used to draw Gann angles. If you have an important high or low you can put your Square of 90 overlay on a high or low and move it up or down to the various support and resistance line. You will be surprised how the Gann angle lines then hit. See the 45 degree angle that was drawn on March 28. When it broke, the market took a large drop into July.



EXHIBIT 9.3 Dec corn

CHAPTER 10

TIME & PRICE OVERLAYS

"Gann's most important discovery"

In his last years, W. D. Gann said that one of his most important discoveries was the time and price overlay. By using it you could save enormous time in doing your calculations for determining the trend of the market. This chapter explores this most important tool.

When W.D. Gann discovered the important tool of the time and price overlay, we did not have computers. All charts were done by hand. It was very difficult to make a nice long term chart that you could effectively use overlays on. Today we have programs such as GannTrader and MAX:CHART. Both of these programs produce excellent precision paper charts which can be used nicely with overlays.



EXHIBIT 10.1 Repeating numbers

By studying and learning how to apply time and price overlays to the various markets one can forecast market price and time swings long into the future. It is necessary to obtain long term historical market data such as in the form of Gann style charts which would include the open, high, low and close of the market. This should be on a daily, weekly, monthly and yearly basis. This information can be obtained from commodity year books, or any of the many historical data services. It is important that the data be linked together correctly. The most effective format of data is the Gann style which links data together from year to year. This means that December 1992 corn would be linked to the December 1993 corn and December 1994 corn would be linked to the December 1993 corn on a continuous basis. Nearby continuous charts link the nearest futures contracts together. This provides a chart similar to the cash markets, but is not as effective in using the overlays. The cash markets and stocks are do not need any linking method. They both work very nicely with overlays.

TYPES OF OVERLAYS

There are two kinds of time and price overlays one can construct to indicate resistance points in the markets. They are the permanent and the variable type. They can be used separately or together to indicate time and price resistance points. The following is a description of each. Permanent time and price overlays give natural resistance points. These resistance points are fixed and based upon key important natural numbers. These overlays help one understand why markets move the way they do. The time and price resistance points formed from these overlays are permanent and do not change. You will learn through trial and error which permanent overlays should be applied to which stock or commodity.

THE VIBRATION NUMBER

Every stock or commodity has its own vibration number and that is what usually sets the square it works in. It will trade within the square of the number. The number is based on one of several factors. The most common is the birth data or incorporation of the stock or commodity. It the stock was incorporated on December 21, 1945 its number would be 3 determined from adding 2 + 1. This data is usually hard to find, but can be found in exchange or corporation records. The next possible basis for the vibration number is the first day of trade on the exchange. It is also possible the number might be found from the all time low or high of the stock or commodity.

COMMODITY ALL TIME HIGHS AND LOWS

Exhibit 10.2 is a listing of some of the all time high and low price for many of the actively traded commodities. The source is the Chicago Board of Trade.

Gann Masters 79

Commodity	All Time High	All Time Low
Mar Wheat	645 - 02/26/74	43 - 12/28/32
May Wheat	636 - 02/26/74	43 1/4 - 12/28/32
Jul Wheat	585 - 02/26/74	43 3/8 - 12/28/32
Sep Wheat	582 - 02/26/74	45 1/412/29/32
Dec Wheat	582 - 02/26/74	41 1/2 - 11/25/32
Mar Corn	409 - 10/04/74	21 - 02/27/33
May Corn	413 - 10/04/74	22 3/4 - 05/09/1897
Jul Corn	411 - 10/4/74	23 1/4 - 05/29/1897
Sep Corn	388 1/4 - 10/04/74	19 1/2 - 09/08/1896
Dec Corn	400 - 10/04/74	20 3/4 - 12/23/32
Mar Oats	207 - 10/04/74	15 1/4 - 02/27/33
May Oats	208 1/2 - 07/30/74	15 3/4 - 03/02/33
Jul Oats	202 1/2 - 06/14/76	14 7/8 - 06/30/1896
Sep Oats	198 1/2 - 7/30/74	14 1/2 - 09/08/1896
Dec Oats	203 - 07/30/74	13 7/8 - 12/03/32
Jan Beans	961 1/2 - 10/04/74	171 - 12/24/41
Mar Beans	969 - 10/04/74	200 - 06/28/49
May Beans	1076 1/2 - 04/22/77	67 - 07/26/39
Jul Beans	1290 - 06/5/73	75 1/2 - 06/17/40
Aug Beans	1175 - 06/26/73	238 1/2 - 08/07/62
Sep Beans	1010 - 07/25/73	241 1/4 - 08/20/53
Nov Beans	956 - 10/04/74	191 1/4 - 02/06/50
Jan Bean Oil	4787 - 10/04/74	700 - 09/30/68
Mar Bean Oil	4676 - 10/04/74	707 - 10/09/68
May Bean Oil	4588 - 10/04/74	715 - 10/09/68
Jul Bean Oil	4512 - 10/04/74	700 - 07/09/68
Aug Bean Oil	4740 - 07/31/74	711 - 07/09/68
Sep Bean Oil	4490 - 07/30/74	705 - 10/08/68
Oct Bean Oil	5100 - 10/01/74	691 - 10/11/68
Dec Bean Oil	4885 - 10/04/74	695 - 10/09/68
Jan Meal	29000 - 08/14/73	4260 - 01/13/58
Mar Meal	28300 - 08/14/73	4320 - 01/13/58
May Meal	32150 - 05/10/73	4370 - 05/21/57
Jul Meal	45100 - 06/05/73	4335 - 06/25/57
Aug Meal	41350 - 06/05/73	4375 - 06/19/67
Sep Meal	36500 - 06/26/73	4290 - 01/23/58
Dec Meal	29700 - 08/18/73	4280 - 06/19/57

EXHIBIT 10.2 Commodity all time highs and lows

It is necessary to experiment with several of the possible numbers that one finds. Use trial and error with several numbers until you find the one that an overlay works with best. You can do that by laying an overlay over a price chart and visually seeing the prices fit in a square.

NATURAL RESISTANCE LEVELS

Permanent time and price overlays are based on divisions of the circle. They can be applied to the measurement of both time and price. The following is a list of the most important resistance levels:

Divisions of the circle by 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 12.

360 / 1 = 360360 / 2 = 180360 / 3 = 120360 / 4 = 90360 / 5 = 72360 / 6 = 60360 / 7 = 51360 / 8 = 45360 / 9 = 40360 / 12 = 30

Overlays can be created based on the above numbers. Some traders have the entire set of overlays made up. They overlay each one on top of prices to find the one that best fits. Some times more than one overlay works. So it maybe necessary to use 2 - 3 overlays to guide you to the price trend.

The following is a listing of the most popular overlays which are based on the above circle numbers:

Description	Base Number
Square of 12	3
Square of 19	4.75
Square of 27	9
Square of 36	9
Square of 40	10
Square of 45	9
Square of 52	13
Square of 90	9
Square of 180	9
Square of 360	9
Square of 144	12

The basic square is drawn by dividing a square from all corners and sides into equal divisions. The corners are divided by odd number angles 3, 5, 7, 9 etc. This is because time is based on odd numbers The sides are divided by even numbers of 2, 4, 8, 16, 32, 64 etc. Sides represent price which is divided by even numbers. In most cases it is not necessary to go all the way out in divisions. The following is an example of a basic square. It is the square of 40 which is 40 squares up and 40 squares across. The square was drawn on 12 x 12 to the inch chart paper produced by MAX:CHART. The software program that plots precision Gann charts.

PERMANENT TIME AND PRICE OVERLAYS

Most permanent time and price overlays are based upon the numbers 1 to 9, but more specifically on the number 9 which is the number that represents the end of the number series upon which all numbers are based upon. In other words beyond the number 9 all ordinary numbers are just a repetition of the first 9. For example, the number 10, as the zero is not a number, it just becomes a repetition of the number 1. The number 11 repeats the number 2, 12 repeats 3, 13 repeats 4 and so on. Exhibit 10.1 shows why all numbers are just a repetition of the numbers 1 through 9.

Overlays with other base numbers are based on time numbers such as 12 for the 12 months of the year or 52 for 52 weeks of the year. These give you a three dimensional time view of the market.

Basic Numbers 1 - 9 1 = 10 reason (1 + 0 = 1) 2 = 11 reason (1 + 1 = 2) 3 = 12 reason (1 + 2 = 3) 4 = 13 reason (1 + 3 = 4) 5 = 14 reason (1 + 4 = 5) 6 = 15 reason (1 + 5 = 6) 7 = 16 reason (1 + 6 = 7) 8 = 17 reason (1 + 7 = 8)9 = 18 reason (1 + 8 = 9)

The fact is the squares that really work well are based on the repeating number of 9. See Exhabit 10.5 of the square of 43. Let's take an example for this repeating number square. Say a commodity bottoms at 42.6. If you add these numbers together (4 + 2 + 6 = 12 and 1 + 2 = 3) if you place the left bottom on that price, the top right will land on 49.80. Now ad this number. (4 + 9 + 8 = 21 and 21 = 3). That's the same number as the bottom.

VARIABLE TIME AND PRICE OVERLAYS

Variable time and price overlays are developed around major tops and bottoms for a particular commodity or stock. Variable time and price overlays can be used together with permanent time and price overlays for time and price resistance levels and movement for a particular commodity or stock. You should study these overlays carefully and learn how the resistance and support point act on them at different levels.

SETTING UP VARIABLE LOW SQUARES

Squares can be worked up for a specific commodity or stock based upon their contract low. For example, on December 28, 1932 March Wheat had a low at \$.43 per bushel. The square or balancing of this price was 43 days, 43 weeks, 43 months. The square of 43 (43 up and 43 across) can be worked up for March Wheat to use for time and resistance points.

SETTING UP VARIABLE HIGH SQUARES

Besides using lows to set up squares one can also use contract highs. Use the all time high of a particular contract for it's balancing square. For example,, March Wheat had a high of \$645 on February 26, 1974. Therefore use the square of 81 (6.45 / 8 = .80625) as its balancing square of this top.

SETTING UP CONTRACT RANGE SQUARES

Besides using contract highs and lows, contract ranges can also be used to set up balancing squares. March Wheat had an all time high of 6.45 - an all time low of 4.43. The difference between the two is 6.02. Therefore a balancing square of 0.70 (6.02 / 8 = 7525) per bushel can be setup to indicate resistance points).

COMBINING SQUARES FOR RESISTANCE POINTS

It is important to combine the natural squares, especially the square of 9 and 13 with the contract high, low and range squares to indicate the time and price resistance points for each stock or commodity. When natural time square points complement the same points given by the variable squares it creates an extra strong points for resistance. In other words if a commodity was working in the permanent square of 144 and the variable square of 43 and they both hit a day the same time, it would be considered a very important turning point.

ODD SQUARES AND HALFWAY POINTS

Odd and even squares and halfway points usually give strong resistance points for time and price. The following is a listing of some of these points. See Exhibit 10.4.

ODD SQUA	ARES AND HALF	WAY POINTS
Sq Of	ls	Halfway
9	3	17
25	5	37
49	7	65
81	9	00
121	11	101
121		145
169	13	
225	15	197
	10	257
289	17	326
361	19	
EVEN SQUA	ARES AND HALF	WAY POINTS
Sq Of	Is	Halfway
4	2	10
16	4	10
26	ć	26
36	6	50
64	8	92
100	10	82
144	10	122
144	12	170
196	14	225
256	16	223
400	20	289

Exhibit 10.4 Odd and even squares

WHERE TO GO FROM HERE

It is important that one uses the proper materials in developing his charts and overlays. The following will give you an idea of where to start.

CHART SCALES

To make plastic transparency overlays use Exhibit 10.2 illustrated in this chapter. The pattern is in the scale of 12 x 12 to the inch and was created by the MAX:CHART software program. If you use different grid paper or a chart service using another scale, you will have to modify them to adjust for the change of scale. Always try to use graph papers with square grid and avoid rectangular grid. It is advisable to use either MAX:CHART or GannTrader to produce the charts for overlays because they save a lot of time and they are more accurate. If you want to charts by hand, the following K&E graph papers are recommended:

#470780	$10 \ge 10$ to the inch
#471020	12×12 to the inch
#471120	16 x 16 to the inch
#471320	20×20 to the inch

The papers are 100% rag stock and come 100 sheets per box. Their size is 11 x 16 1/2". They can be purchased from Gann Masters.

CONSTRUCTION MATERIALS

You will find it necessary to obtain construction materials to create the vari-





ous overlays you will require. Materials can be ordered through Gann Masters. The plastic overlay material comes in rolls and it is recommended that you purchase SCUF permanent marker pens for drawing angles on the overlay materials.

THE IMPORTANCE OF CHARTS

It is important again to stress that the bar charts you set up must be done according to time and price guidelines. That means the price per grid should be based on Gann numbers. For example, 10, 20, 40, 50, 80 or 100. The prices should be set up on a open, high, low and closing basis. Holidays and weekends on the charts should be omitted. That means do not leave spaces for them. The charts are set up on trading basis only.

IMPORTANT FUTURE MONTHS

The important future months should be watched for key signals. A good set of charts should include the key months of future contracts of the year in commodity future contracts. For example, in most commodities the 12th and 6th positions of the cycle of the year are important. These are December and June. The next important commodities are the 3rd and 9th positions which are March and October.

SCALE

The scale is very important. The correct scale on a chart can be determined by how the overlays fit it. The 1 x 1 angle should usually hit the 50% reaction exactly.



EXHIBIT 10.5 Square of 43

TIME INCREMENTS

The time increments are important. When trading correctly, you should have daily, weekly, monthly and yearly charts. If possible the chart should go back to the beginning of the contract. If that is not possible then you should at least have the all time high or low on the chart. Weekly charts are the most useful for long range trading.

TIME AND PRICE LABELS

The calendar should be correctly labeled at the bottom of the chart indicating year, month and day. The price should be correctly labeled on the side with price divisions related to circle numbers if possible. Price divisions are the heavy horizontal guide lines on a chart.

UPDATE SPACE

It is very important to have the necessary update space on your chart so you can do long range forecasting. On a daily chart the update space should go out 1 year. On the weekly chart the update space should go out for 2 years and on a monthly chart the update space should go out for 5 - 10 years.

TIME FRAMES

Man has learned to measure time with calendar periods. The larger the calendar period, the more important it is. Different time periods should be used to get the trend of the market. You should always know what direction each of the time periods is in. It will make you a much more effective trader. Watch closely for a change of trend in each time frame and trade accordingly. In order of importance the following are calendar periods most used:

IMPORTANT TIME FRAMES

Yearly - for long term Monthly - for long term Weekly - for intermediate and long term Daily - for short term Hourly - for short term 60 minute - for short term 30 minute - for short term 15 minute - for short term 5 minute - for short term

HOW TO USE THE OVERLAY

It is recommend that you get monthly, weekly and daily charts of the markets you want to trade. These are the charts that W.D. Gann used. All these charts

must have adequate update space to the right of the chart for updating and forecasting future trends. By using all of these charts your perspective of where the market is will greatly improve.

MONTHLY CHARTS

These charts should be back for at least 30 years. They should have update space for at least five years. They are the best charts to use for effective long term time counts. They also give you excellent price support and resistance levels. These charts often change every 3 months.

WEEKLY CHARTS

The weekly chart is probably the best long term chart to trade from by the average trader. The chart should have 5 to 10 years of data on it and at least 2 years of update space. You will find that these charts often will change trend every 3 - 12 weeks. This is an excellent chart to use verify that the monthly charts are changing trend.

DAILY CHARTS

The daily charts are used by most traders, from computer programs to chart services. These charts should be at least 3 years in length and have update space of 1 year. Most losses occur because of these charts because people do not know how to trade them. These are the charts that you will use to enter and exit the market after both the monthly and weekly charts have changed trends. The scale on these charts is very important. Gann tried to use a 1 to 1 scale in most cases. You will have to experiment with the scale so it is right. Commodities like corn, wheat, oats, and the S&P might be on a scale of 1 to 1. You'll have to experiment with this scale by to get it right.

INTRADAY CHARTS

The intraday chart is the most difficult chart to trade with. More people lose money using this chart than any of the others. For the beginner 60 or 30 minute charts are recommended. Used properly they can help your entry into the market. After the monthly, weekly, daily charts have all changed trends, use these charts to enter or exit the market with precision. For these charts, you'll have to have real time or delayed data from an on on-line service such as Signal.

ADVANCEMENTS IN COMPUTERS AND SOFTWARE

There have been some advancements in computers that have helped to narrow the edge chart paper has. The speed of the new machine are awesome. They can pull charts up in split seconds. This save significant time and greatly aids the researcher and the trader. These computers use the new PCI bus. This allows increased speed with hard disk drives for pulling up data faster. It also allows for faster on screen redrawing of charts.

MS WINDOWS SOFTWARE

Many new programs are being developed on this platform. The windows platform is easy to use and gives the advantage of high resolution screen output. Window programs such as SuperCharts and Trade Station are excellent and give you many of the tools you need to trade with. See the charts in this book, they were produced with SuperCharts and Trade Station. The Number Nine video card is a wonderful video card is capable of giving you big charts on your monitor almost as good as long term paper charts. See Exhibit 10.6. It has the advantage of giving you monthly, weekly, daily and intraday charts of any time scale. The resolution of this card can go as high as 1600 x 1200 with a virtual screen 2 to 4 times as large. This card gives you a portal view on a much larger virtual screen. Through this port, you can scroll around with a hardware pan with the use of your mouse. This will give you a screen chart which in most cases is as large as chart paper printed on long term grid paper.

17" FLAT COMPUTER MONITOR

The excellent and bright new monitors are wonderful. They provide a tight dot pitch of .26 - .28 and their screens are almost flat. Some traders actually lay rulers over the front of the screens. The NEC brand is usually the most recommended by Gann Masters.



Exhibit 10.6 Number nine virtual screen on screen adjustment

HOW TO USE THE PLASTIC SQUARE OVERLAYS

The plastic square overlays should be overlayed over price charts in the followng fashion (See Exhibit 10.7)

1. The bottom/left corner of the square should be placed below the exact bottom on the date of the bottom. This will show the important support angles pointing up.

2. The top/left corner of the overlay should be placed above the exact highs on the date of the high. This will show the important resistance angles running down from the top.

3. The square overlay can also be placed on 1/2 of the highest high. It can also be placed on an important circle number or a table number.

4. It can also be placed on 1/2 of the range. The angles will indicate support or resistance where they hit price.

5. The bottom/left corner can also be placed on the 0 low under and major high or low.

6. It you use an MACD oscillator the square can also be placed on a momentum high or low which not necessary the price high or low.

7. The top/left high can also be placed over the anniversary date or 1/2, 1/4 or 1/3 of the anniversary of a high 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 etc. years out.



Exhibit 10.7 The Square of 36 overlay

CHAPTER 11

TABLE CHARTS

"The secret behind time and price moves"

This chapter on table charts has been developed from long experience, cultivation and studious research designed to unravel, at least to some extent, the mysteries of the subject of table charts on which many students of Gann have floundered.

It is admitted by all that the theory of application of table charts for time and price forecasting has been the one side of technical analysis that has been least explored or investigated.

This chapter is designed for the serious-minded student of the commodity and stock market. Presented herein will be the often misunderstood and mysterious table charts that most traders have so much trouble understanding. The table charts are presented in two different forms. The most used is the square table form, the second is the tritable. The ideas on how to use these table charts will remain ideas unless one spends many hours studying each one and proving to his own satisfaction that they work.

All the table charts in this chapter are produced with the Microsoft Excel spread sheet program. The template for this program is available free with this course. This is an excellent piece of software that can save you many hours in constructing these variations of table charts rather than doing them by hand.

Time and price forecasting are the essential ingredients for success in trading the markets. One who can predict time and price movements of the markets can reap enormous financial rewards. Proper interpretation of the table charts should help one anticipate many of the fundamentals that one



EXHIBIT 11.1 - Square of 3 chart

needs to know long before they become known to the general public. Table charts give a mathematical view point of how a market should move with respect to both time and price. With the knowledge table charts gives you, can easily spot the important support and resistance points.

By studying and learning how to apply table charts to the various markets one can forecast market price and time swings long into the future. It is necessary to obtain historical market information such as the first trade day of a commodity or stock, major high and low prices with dates of each. This information can be found from commodity year books, historical data, chart services and from company records.

The more you study commodity or stock price movements, the better you will understand the markets. Working with table charts will help you understand the interplay of the underlying economic forces of supply and demand in the market. This chapter will attempt to help you develop an understanding of price and time movements and provide you with fertile seeds which, if properly nurtured, should yield success in the field of stock and commodity speculation.

With these few words as a preface, I will endeavor to make the theory and application of table charts so clear that I hope anyone of ordinary education may be able to follow and experiment with certain rules which will be treated in the following chapters.

BASIC NUMBERS

The table charts presented in this chapter are mathematical sequences of numbers presented in various forms of design to aid the technician in the forecasting both time and price movements in the stock and commodity markets. The charts are based upon the numbers 1 to 9, but more specifically on the number 9 which has to be regarded as the end of the series of numbers, upon which all of our materialistic calculations are built upon. Beyond the number 9 all ordinary numbers are just a repetition of the first 9. For example, the number 10, as the zero is not a number just becomes a repetition of the number 1 The number 11 repeats the number 2, 12 repeats 3, 13 repeats 4 and so one. The

84 90 96 102 108 120 126 132 138 144 150 156 162 168 174 160 186 132 138 204 210 216 222 228 234 240 246 252 48 54 60 r ÌN. 18 24 30 66 12 35 41 107 113 hq 125 131 x67 143 149 h55 161 167 x93 179 185 191, 197 203 206 215 221 227 233 239 245 251 17 23 - 29 ÀR 53 59 - 65 71 77 λa. 83 35 101 34 40 46 64 70 76 82 100 106 112 118 124 ,450 136 142 148 154 160 ,466 172 178 184 190 136 ,262 208 214 220 226 282 ,238 244 250 10 28 86 4 63 69 75 33 105 111 117 x23 129 135 141 147 153 x53 185 171 177 183 183 x95 201, 207 213 219 225 x31 287 243 243 3 27 33 39 45 57. 81 9 50 56 86 92 104 110 ,#6 122 128 134 140 146 ,#52 158 164 170 176 182 ,#68 134 200 206, 212 218 ,224 230 236 242 248 32 38 sh. 62 68 74 80 43 49 55 61 79 85 91 97 100, 109 115 121 127 133 139, 145 151 157 163 169 1745 1/61 187 193 199 205 217, 1217 223 229 235 241 2347 13 - 73 TABLE

EXHIBIT 11.2 - Square of 6 chart

following illustration shows why all numbers are just a repetition of the numbers 1 through 9.

BASIC NUMBERS 1 - 9

1 = 10 reason (1 + 0 = 1) 2 = 11 reason (1 + 1 = 2) 3 = 12 reason (1 + 2 = 3) 4 = 13 reason (1 + 3 = 4) 5 = 14 reason (1 + 4 = 5) 6 = 15 reason (1 + 5 = 6) 7 = 16 reason (1 + 6 = 7) 8 = 17 reason (1 + 7 = 8)9 = 18 reason (1 + 8 = 9)

The above are sequences of numbers that add up to the indicated based number. Look them over and use the following pages as a reference to those numbers.

KINDS OF TABLE CHARTS

There are two kinds of table charts one can construct to represent support and resistance points for both time and price in the markets. They are the permanent and the variable number table.

. 27 36 45 54 63 72 81 90 99 ∕108 11∕ 126 135 144 153 162 171 180 189 198 207 ∕216 229 234 243 252 261 270 279 288 297 306 315 ∕524 330 342 351 360 369 378 . 18 `26 35 44 53 62 71 80 83√ 98 107 116 125`\34 143 152 161 170 179 188 137´296 215 224 233`\242 251 260 269 278 287 296 30€´314 323 332 341`\350 359 368 377 8 17 7 16 25 43 52 61 70 79 88 97 124 133 ÎNL2 151 160 169 178 ja7 196 205 214 223 232 241 259 268 277 286 avec 304 313 322 331 340 349 358 367 376 123 132 141 150, 159 168 177 186 195 204 213 222 231 240 249 250, 267 276 285 294 303 312 321 330 339 348 357 366, 375 6 15 24 33 .51 60 / 69 78 87 96 105 . 42 114 \$39 68 77 86 95 104 113 122 131 140 149 158∕467 176 185 194 203 212 221 230 239 248 257 266√275 284 293 302 311 320 329 338 347 356 365 37 5 14 23 32 41 50/ AÚ 49 58 67, 76 85 94 103 112 121 130 139 JAÍ 157 166 775 184 133 202 211 220 229 238 247 JAÍ 255 274 285 292 301 310 319 328 337 346 355 JAÍ 373 4 13 22 31 3 12 21 /30 39 48 57 66 75 84 93 102 111 120 129 /138 147 156 165 174 183, 192 201 210 219 228 237 /246 255 264 273 282 29, 300 309 318 327 336 345 /354 363 372 23 38 47 `¥2 101 110 119√128 137 146 155 164 173 182 191`4280 209 218 2227′236 245 254 263 272 281 290 299`408 317 326 33£7′344 353 362 371 56 65 74 83 2 55 64 73 82 91 108 149 118 127 136 145 154 163 172 181 190 199 208 247 226 235 244 253 262 271 280 289 298 307 346 325 334 343 352 361 370 3-TABLE

EXHIBIT 11.3 - Square of 9 chart

THE FIXED CHART

The fixed chart gives you natural resistance points. These natural resistance points are fixed and based upon key important numbers. These tables help one understand why markets move the way they do. The time and price resistance points formed from these fixed charts are permanent and do not change. You will learn through trial and error which table charts should be applied to which stock or commodity. Every stock and commodity has its own square of a number that it works in and that number will never change. The following is a listing of the most commonly used fixed tables.

SQUARE TABLE CHARTS

Square of 3 Square of 4 Square of 6 Square of 9 Square of 12 Square of 19 Square of 20 Square of 24 Square of 27 Square of 36 Square of 52 Square of 90



EXHIBIT 11.4 - Square of 12 chart

THE VARIABLE CHART

Variable table charts are developed around key individual market data beginnings, and major price tops and bottoms for a particular commodity or stock. Variable table charts can be used together with fixed table charts for time and price resistance levels and movements for a particular commodity or stock. Variable table charts can be used together with fixed table charts for time and price resistance levels and movement for a particular commodity or stock. You should study these charts carefully and learn how the resistance points are formed and how to apply them.

13	38	57	76	95	114	133	152	171	190	209	228	247	266	285	304	323	342	361	380	399	418	437	456	475	494	513	532	551	570	583	608	627	646	665	684	703	pa	her	760	779	73
18	37	56	75	94	113	132	151	170	189	208	227	246	265	284	303	322	341	360	379	398	417	436	455	474	493	512	531	550	569	588	607	626	645	664	683	762	721	740	के	778	73
17	36	55	74	93	112	131	150	169	188	207	226	245	264	283	302	3/21	340	359	378	397	d 16	435	454	473	492	511	539	549	568	587	606	625	644	663	6 82	701	720	739	758	785	78
16	35	54	25	92	111	130	149	168	187	206	225	244	263	282	9b1	320	339	358	377	396	415	454	453	472	491	510	529	548	567	586	605	624	643	6 62	681	700	719	738	757	776	75
15	34	53	72	Je	110	129	148	167	186	205	224	243	262	281	300	319	338	357	376	395	414	433	452	471	490	503	528	547	566	585	604	623	842	661	680	699	718	737	756	775	79
14	33	52	71	90	Na	128	147	166	185	204	223	242	261	280	299	318	337	356	375	394	413	432	451	470	489	508	527	546	565	584	603	ø22	641	660	679	698	717	736	755	774	79
13	32	51	70	89	108	127	146	165	184	203	222	a 41	260	279	298	317	336	355	374	393	412	431	450	469	488	507	526	545	564	583	602	621	640	659	678	697	716	735	754	773	79
12	31	50	69	88	107	126	145	164	183	202	221	240	259	278	297	316	335	354	373	392	411	430	449	468	487	586	525	544	563	582	601	620	639	658	677	696	715	734	753	772	79
11	30	49	68	87	106	125	144	163	182	201	220	239	258	277	296	315	334	353	372	391	410	429	448	467	486	505	524	543	862	581	600	619	638	657	676	695	714	733	752	771	79
10	29	48	67	86	105	124	143	162	X	200	219	238	257	276	295	314	333	352	371	390	403	428	447	466	485	504	523	X	561	580	599	618	637	656	675	694	713	732	751	770	78
9	28	47	66	85	104	123	142	16 1	180	193	218	237	256	275	294	313	332	351	370	389	408	427	446	465	484	503	722	541	560	579	598	617	636	655	674	693	712	731	750	769	78
8	27	46	65	84	103	122	141	160	179	138	शेर	236	255	274	293	312	331	350	369	388	407	426	445	464	483	502	521	540	559	578	597	616	635	654	673	692	711	730	749	768	78
7	26	45	64	83	102	yeı	140	159	178	197	216	235	254	273	292	311	330	349	368	387	406	425	444	463	K 82	501	520	539	558	577	536	615	634	653	672	691	710	729	748	767	786
6	25	44	63	82	101	120	139	158	177	136	215	234	258	272	291	310	329	348	367	386	405	424	443	K 62	481	500	519	538	557	576	595	614	633	652	671	690	709	728	747	766	78
5	24	43	62	81	100	119	138	157	176	195	214	233	252	274	290	309	328	347	366	385	404	423	x 42	461	480	499	518	537	556	575	594	613	632	651	670	689	708	727	746	765	784
4	23	42	81	80	99	118	137	156	175	134	213	232	251	270	288	308	327	346	365	384	403	ka	441	460	479	498	517	536	555	574	593	612	631	650	669	688	707	726	745	764	783
3	22	A 1	60	79	98	117	136	155	174	193	212	231	250	269	288	307	326	345	364	383	A 62	421	440	459	478	497	516	535	554	573	592	611	630	649	688	687	706	725	744	783	782
2	p1	40	59	78	97	116	135	154	173	192	211	230	249	268	287	306	325	344	363	8 82	401	420	439	458	477	496	515	534	553	572	591	610	629	648	667	636	705	724	743	762	78
A	20	39	58	77	96	115	134	153	172	191	210	229	248	267	286	305	324	343	862	381	400	419	438	457	476	495	514	533	552	571	590	609	628	647	666	685	704	723	742	761	780
19 -	TABLE																																								

EXHIBIT 11.5 - Square of 19 chart

THE SQUARE TABLE CHART

The square table chart is the most commonly used forecasting table of all the types available. It has a basic square or rectangle construction. The charts start out in the lower left corner going up in number progression to the top of the square. It then restarts back down at the bottom in row two and starts up again and so on. The following is a description of several of the more popular squares.

THE SQUARE OF 3 CHART

Exhibit 11.1 shows the square of three table chart 3 up and 3 over. It is the most basic of table charts and represents the importance of the number 5 as

40 60 80 100 120 140 160 180 200 220 240 260 280 300 320 340 360 380 400 420 440 460 480 500 520 540 560 580 600 620 640 660 680 700 720 740 760 780 800 820 840 119 139 159 179 199 219 239 259 279 299 319 339 359 379 399 419 439 459 479 499 519 539 559 579 599 619 639 659 679 689 719 739 759 779 789 819 839 198 218 238 258 278 298 318 338 368 378 398 418 438 458 478 498 518 538 558 578 598 618 638 658 678 698 718 738 366 778 798 818 838 36 56 76 30, 116 136 156 176 136 216 236 256 276 236 316 336 356 376 336 416 436 456 476 436 516 536 556 578 536 516 536 556 578 536 516 536 576 736 736 756 776 736 816 836 15 35 55 75 35 112 135 135 135 135 135 215 235 255 275 265 315 335 355 375 395 415 435 435 435 435 435 535 555 575 595 615 635 655 675 645 715 735 735 735 735 815 835 14 34 54 74 34 114 13a 154 174 134 214 234 254 374 234 314 334 354 374 334 414 434 454 474 434 514 534 554 574 534 614 634 654 674 634 714 734 754 774 734 814 834 13 33 53 73 93 113 133 153, 173 193 213 233 245 273 293 313 333 353 373 393 413 433 453 473 493 513 533 553 573 593 613 633 655 673 693 713 733 753 773 793 813 833 72 32 112 132 152 172 132 212 362 252 272 232 312 332 352 372 332 412 432 452 472 432 512 532 552 572 532 612 682 672 632 712 732 752 772 732 812 832 31 51 71 91 111 131 151 171 184, 271 231 251 271 291 311 331 351 371 391 411 431 451 471 491 511 531 551 571 834 671 631 651 671 691 711 731 751 771 791 811 831 30 50 70 90 110 130 150 170 150 270, 230 250 270 290 310 330 350 370 390 410 430 450 470 490 510 530 550 570 556 by 630 650 670 690 710 739 750 770 790 810 830 9 29 49 69 89 109 129 149 169 109 229 229 249 269 289 309 329 349 369 389 409 429 449 469 489 509 529 549 569 589 609 629 649 669 689 709 729 749 769 789 809 829 28 48 68 88 108 128 148 168 188 208 228 208 268 268 308 328 348 368 388 408 428 448 468 488 508 528 548 568 588 608 628 648 668 608 728 748 768 788 808 828 7 27 47 67 87 107 127 147 167 187 207 227 247 267 287 307 327 347 367 387 407 427 447 467 487 507 527 547 567 587 607 627 647 667 687 707 727 747 767 787 807 827 6 26 46 66 86 106 126 146 166 186 206 226 246 266 20a 306 326 346 366 386 406 426 446 466 486 506 526 546 566 586 606 626 646 666 686 706 726 746 766 786 806 826 5 25 45 65 set 105 125 145 165 185 205 225 245 265 285 3ds 325 345 365 385 405 425 445 465 425 505 525 545 565 585 605 625 645 665 685 7e5 725 745 765 785 805 825 4 24 44 per 84 104 124 144 164 184 204 224 244 264 284 304 324 344 364 384 404 424 444 484 484 504 524 544 564 584 604 624 644 664 684 704 724 744 764 784 804 824 3 23 223 243 263 283 383 323 343 363 383 403 423 443 463 483 503 523 543 563 583 603 623 643 663 683 703 723 743 763 783 803 823 202 222 242 262 282 382 322 342 382 382 402 422 442 462 482 502 522 542 562 582 602 622 642 662 682 702 722 742 762 782 802 962 2 22 42 62 181 201 221 241 261 281 301 321 341 361 381, 401 421 441 461 481 501 521 541 561 581 601 621 641 661 681 701 721 741 761 781 781 781 21 41 61 81 20 - TABLE

EXHIBIT 11.6 - Square of 20 chart

the mid point or halfway point of our basic 1 to 9 number system. The number 5 is surrounded on all sides by 4 numbers, the numbers 2, 4, 6, and 8. This table chart is the most basic of all and is the basis of all numbers.

THE SQUARE OF 6 CHART

Exhibit 11.2 shows the square of 6 chart 6 up and 6 over ending at 36. This first square of 36 is very important for time and price measurement. Six represents one quarter of the hours in the day. Six months is one half of the year. Six is a division of the circle $6 \ge 60 = 360$ degrees.

Ē	_	_								_	_	_												1												_	_	_	_		_					_
Ĩ	èx 4	8 72	96	120	144	168	192	216	240	264	288	312	336	360	384	408	432	456	480	504	528	552	576	680	624	648	672	636	720	744	768	732	816	840	864	888	912	936	960	984	1008	3 1032	2 1056	> 1080	1104	1128
I	23 4	R 71	95	119	143	167	191	215	239	263	3 287	311	335	359	383	407	431	455	479	503	527	851	575	599	633	647	671	695	719	743	767	791	815	839	863	887	911	935	959	983	1007	7 1031	1 1055	5 1079	1103	y27
I	22 4	5 78	L 94	118	142	166	190	214	238	262	286	310	334	358	382	406	430	454	478	502	526	, 550	574	598	622	646	670	694	718	742	766	790	814	838	862	886	910	934	958	982	1006	3 1030) 1054	J 1078	1102	1126
I	21 4	5 63	te 1	117	141	165	189	213	237	261	1 285	303	333	357	381	405	423	4 53	477	5 01	/ 525	549	573	597	621	645	669	693	717	741	765	789	813	837	861	885	303	933	957	981	1005	5 1025	3 1053	3 1977	/ 1101	1125
I	20 4	1 68	. 92	116	140	164	188	212	236	260	1 284	308	332	356	380	404	428	452	15	500	524	548	572	536	620	644	668	690	716	740	764	788	812	836	860	884	398	332	356	380	เทกง	1028	8 1052	/	1100	1124
I		, ., , .,	,		2	10.0	107	044	0.05	050	, men	207	0.004	000	070	402	407	4	475	100	500	547	574	FOF	240	640	667		1.0	700	76.0	707	044	00F	050	000	907	0.04	000	070	14005	, wh	7 4054	4075	1000	402
I	10 4	, or		611 	108	100	101	211	200	200	, 200	- 301		300	010	400	441	, 401	410	400	525	941	ori	000	010	040	001	001	ng mi	1.00	100	101	011	000	000	000	901	301	300	010	1003 		1051	1010	1033	1120
I	18 4	2 66) 90	114	138	162	186	210	234	258	3 282	306	330	354	378	402	# 26	459	474	498	522	546	570	594	618	642	666	630	714	738	762	786	810	834	858	882	306	930	954	978 /	1902	: 1026	→ 1050 →	1074	1038	1122
I	17 4	1 65	5 89	113	137	161	185	209	233	257	281	305	329	353	377	x 01	425	449	473	497	521	545	569	593	617	641	665	689	713	737	761	785	809	833	857	881	305	929	953 /	917	1001	1025	; 1049	/ 1073	1097	1121
I	16 4) 64	88	112	136	160	184	208	232	256	5 280	304	328	352	276	400	424	44 8	472	496	520	544	568	592	616	640	664	688	712	736	760	784	808	832	856	880	304	928	952	976	1000) 1024	1048	: 1072	1036	1120
I	15 3	9 63	87	111	135	159	183	207	234	255	5 279	303	327	251	375	399	423	447	471	495	519	543	567	591	615	639	663	687	711	735	759	783	887	831	855	879	303	927	951	975	393	1023	3 1047	1071	1095	1119
I	14 3	8 62	86	110	134	158	182	206	230	254	278	302	26	350	374	398	422	44 6	470	494	518	542	566	530	614	638	662	686	710	734	758	782	806	830	854	878	% 2	926	950	974	398	/ 1022	2 1046	, 1070	1034	1118
I	13 3	7 61	85	103	133	157	181	205	229	253	273	201	325	349	373	397	421	445	463	493	517	541	565	589	613	637	661	685	709	733	757	781	805	829	859	ŋn	901	925	949	973	397	/ 1021	i 1045	5 1069	1093	1117
I	12 3	5 60	84	108	132	156	180	204	228	252	e phe	300	324	348	372	396	420	444	468	492	516	540	564	588	612	636	660	684	708	732	756	780	804	828	852	876	390	924	948	972	336) 1020) 1044	1068	1032	1116
I	11 3	5 53	83	107	131	155	179	203	227	251	/	293	320	347	371	395	419	44 3	467	491	515	539	563	587	611	635	659	683	707	731	755	779	803	epz7	851	875	988	923	947	971	335	; 1019) 1043	3 1067	1091	1115
I	10 3	\$ 58	82	106	130	154	178	202	226	/ 250) 274	298	322	346	370	394	418	442	466	490	514	538	562	586	610	634	658	682	706	730	754	778	802	826	850	874	898	322	946	970	994	1018	3 1042	2 1066	1030	1114
I	93	3 57	, 81	105	123	153	177	201	225	243	1 273	297	321	345	388	393	417	441	465	489	513	537	561	585	603	633	657	681	705	729	753	h	801	825	849	873	897	321	345	363	993	1017	/ 1041	1 1065	1089	1113
I	•••	, ,,	00		100	100		200	201	040	, 610) 070	100	200	211	~~~	2	446			400	540	500	560	504	600	620	656	600	201	700	-	776	200	000	040	070	000	910	•~~ •••	7.	000	1 4046	1041	1000	1000	
I	•••	: 00		104	120	100	110	200		240		200	, 220	044	200	30K	410	440	404	400	216	500	500	004	000	0.02	000	000	104	120	/	110	000	024	040	012	000	320	344	300		1010	1040	1004	1000	
I	73	1 55	5 79	103	127	151	175	199	223	247	? 271	295	5 319	343	367	391	415	439	463	487	511	535	553	583	607	631	655	679	703	727	751	775	799	823	847	871	835	313	943	367	331	1015	1039	1063	1087	1111
I	63) 54	78	102	1 26	150	174	198	222	246	5 270	294	318	342	366	390	414	438	462	486	510	534	558	582	606	639	654	678 /	762	726	750	774	798	822	846	870	894	918	942	966	390	i idių	. 1038	1062	1086	1110
I	5 2	9 53	; 77 /	101	125	149	173	197	221	245	5 263	293	317	341	365	389	413	437	461	485	503	533	557	581	605	629	653	۶ħ	701	725	749	773	797	821	845	869	893	917	941	965	383	1013	: 1037	1061	1085	1109
I	4 2	8 52	76	100	124	148	172	196	220	244	268	292	316	340	364	388	412	436	460	484	598	532	556	580	604	628	652	676	700	724	748	772	796	820	844	868	892	316	940	964	388) 1012	: 1036	, 106Q	1084	1108
I	3 2	7 /51	75	99	123	147	171	195	219	243	3 267	291	315	339	363	387	411	435	453	483	507	531	555	579	603	éla	651	675	699	723	747	771	795	819	843	867	891	315	939	963	987	1011	1035	; 1059	1083	1107
I	2 /2	5 50	74	38	122	146	170	194	218	242	266	290) 314	338	362	386	410	434	458	482	596	539	554	578	602	626	650	674	698	722	746	770	794	818	842	866	830	314	938	962	386) 1010	/ 1034	1058	1082	1186
	1 2	5 43	73	97	121	145	163	193	217	241	265	283	313	337	361	385	403	433	457	481	505	529	558	y n	601	625	649	673	697	721	745	769	793	817	841	865	889	913	937	361	385	i 1009	9 1033	3 1057	1081	1105
â	4 - TAE	LE																																												

EXHIBIT 11.7 - Square of 24 chart

THE SQUARE OF 9 CHART

Exhibit 11.3 shows the square of 9 chart which is very important in measuring time and price moves. As we stated earlier in the course the number 9 in our mathematical system is very important. You cannot count beyond 9 without starting over with the number 0. In the square 9×9 which equals 81 which completes the first square of 9. The second square of 9 is completed at 162, the third square of 9 is completed at 243 and the fourth square of 9 ends at 324. Completing five squares gives us the important number of 360.

THE SQUARE OF 12 CHART

Exhibit 11.4 shows the square of 12 chart which is a very important table chart. It is important because of its relationship to the 12 months of the year. It consists of a chart which is 12 up and 12 over which makes the first square

27	54	81	108	135	162	189	216	243	270	297	324	351	378	405	432	459	486	513	540	567	534	621	648	675	702	723	756	783	810	837	864	891	918	345	972	999	1026	1053	1080	1107	1134	1161
26	53	80	107	134	161	188	215	242	269	296	323	350	377	404	431	458	485	512	533	566	593	620	647	674	701	728	755	782	809	836	863	890	917	344	371	338	1025	1052	1079	1106	1133	1160
25	52	73	106	133	160	187	214	241	268	295	322	349	376	403	430	457	484	511	538	565	532	619	646	8 73	700	727	754	781	888	835	862	889	916	343	970	997	1024	1051	1078	1105	1132	1159
24	51	78	105	132	159	186	213	240	267	294	321	348	375	402	429	456	483	510	537	564	591	618	845	672	699	726	753	780	807	834	861	888	915	342	969	336	1023	1050	1077	1104	1131	1158
23	50	77	104	134	158	185	212	239	266	293	320	347	374	401	428	455	482	503	536	563	539	817	644	671	698	725	752	779	806	833	360	887	314	941	968	335	1022	1043	1076	1103	1130	1157
22	49	76	103	130	15R	184	211	238	265	292	319	346	373	400	427	454	481	598	535	562	583	616	643	670	697	724	751	778	805	832	859	386	913	340	967	334	1021	1048	1075	1102	1129	1156
21	48	75	102	129	156	183	210	237	264	291	318	345	372	399	426	453	480	507	534	861	588	615	642	663	696	723	750	777	804	831	858	885	ક્રાર	939	966	993	1020	1047	1074	1101	1128	1155
20	47	74	101	128	155	182	209	236	263	290	317	344	371	398	425	452	479	596	5 53	560	587	614	641	668	695	722	749	776	803	830	857	884	911	938	965	332	1019	1046	1073	1100	1127	1154
19	46	73	100	127	154	181	208	235	262	289	316	343	370	397	424	451	478	505	532	559	586	613	640	667	694	721	748	775	802	829	856	883	910	937	964	991	1018	1045	1072	1033	1126	1153
18	45	72	99	126	153	180	207	234	264	288	315	342	369	396	423	450	phi	504	531	558	585	612	639	666	693	720	747	774	801	828	855	882	909	336	963	98E	1017	1044	1071	1098	1125	1152
17	44	71	98	125	152	179	206	233	260	28R	314	341	368	395	422	\$4 3	476	503	530	557	584	611	638	665	692	719	746	773	800	827	854	881	908	335	962	989	1046	1043	1070	1097	1124	1151
16	43	70	97	124	151	178	205	232	259	286	313	340	367	394	k 21	448	475	502	523	556	583	610	637	664	691	718	745	772	799	826	853	880	307	934	961	988	1015	1042	1069	1096	1123	¥150
15	42	69	96	123	150	177	204	231	258	285	312	339	366	3 93	420	447	474	501	528	555	582	603	636	663	690	717	744	771	798	825	852	879	306	933	960	987	1014	1041	1068	1095	y22	1149
14	41	68	95	122	149	176	203	230	257	284	311	338	365	392	413	446	473	500	527	554	581	608	635	662	689	716	743	770	797	824	851	878	305	932	959	386	1013	1040	1067	X	1121	1148
13	40	67	94	121	148	175	202	229	256	283	310	3 57	364	391	418	445	472	493	526	553	580	607	634	661	688	715	742	769	736	823	850	877	904	931	958	385	1012	1039	1066	1093	1120	1147
12	39	66	93	120	147	174	201	228	255	282	303	336	363	390	417	444	471	498	525	552	579	606	633	660	687	714	741	768	795	822	849	876	903	930	957	384	1011	y9 38	1065	1092	1119	11346
11	38	65	92	119	146	173	200	227	254	281	308	335	362	389	416	443	470	497	524	551	578	605	632	653	686	713	740	767	734	821	848	875	902	929	956	983	x01 0	1037	1064	1091	1118	1145
10	37	64	91	118	145	172	199	226	253	280	307	334	361	388	415	442	469	496	523	550	577	604	631	658	685	712	739	766	793	820	847	874	391	928	955	7 82	1003	1036	1063	1090	1117	1144
9	36	63	90	117	144	171	198	225	252	279	306	333	360	387	414	441	468	495	522	549	576	603	630	657	684	711	738	765	792	819	846	873	900	927	<u>854</u>	981	1008	1035	1062	1089	1116	1143
8	35	62	89	116	143	170	757	224	251	278	305	332	359	386	413	440	467	494	521	548	575	602	629	656	683	710	737	764	791	818	845	872	899	8 26	953	980	1007	1034	1061	1088	1115	1142
7	34	61	88	115	142	16 9	196	223	250	277	304	331	358	385	412	439	466	493	520	547	574	601	628	655	682	709	736	763	739	817	844	871	898	925	952	979	1006	1033	1060	1087	1114	1141
6	33	60	87	114	141	168	195	222	249	276	303	330	357	384	411	438	465	492	519	546	573	600	627	654	681	708	735	762	789	816	843	x to	897	324	951	978	1005	1032	1059	1086	1113	1140
5	32	59	86	ИЗ	140	167	194	221	248	275	302	329	356	383	410	437	464	491	518	545	572	599	626	653	680	707	734	761	788	815	842	869	896	923	950	977	1004	1031	1058	1085	1112	1139
4	31	58	85	112	139	166	193	220	247	274	301	328	355	382	403	436	463	490	517	544	571	598	625	652	679	706	733	760	787	814	841	868	895	922	949	976	1003	1030	1057	1084	1111	1138
3	30	\$7	84	111	138	165	192	219	246	273	300	327	354	381	408	435	462	489	516	543	570	597	624	651	678	705	732	759	786	813	840	867	894	921	948	975	1002	1023	1056	1083	1110	1137
2	29	56	83	110	137	164	191	218	245	272	299	326	353	380	407	434	461	488	515	542	569	536	623	650	677	704	731	758	785	812	839	866	893	320	947	374	1001	1028	1055	1082	1109	1136
И	28	55	82	109	136	163	190	217	244	271	298	325	352	379	406	433	460	487	514	541	568	595	622	649	676	703	750	757	784	811	838	865	892	919	946	973	1000	1027	1054	1081	1108	1135
27 - 1	TABLE																																									

EXHIBIT 11.8 - Square of 27 chart

of 144 and the fourth square at 576 - all key mathematical resistance numbers. The squares all end on the important 9 numbers. There is (1 + 4 + 4 = 9), (2 + 8 + 8 = 18) and so on. The number 9 is the finality on which all our number calculations are built. This important square can be used to measure both time and price movements. That is, the number of time or price points up or down in units days, weeks, months our years. You can make as many squares as you want to cover any price or time movement. Now lets list and analyze the important areas of resistance in the first square.

1) The Major Center is where the strongest resistance is met. These are the four number in the center of the square - 66, 67, 68 and 69. A stock or commodity going up or down should meet strong resistance here.

2) The Diagonal Resistance Numbers are the second strongest resistance points. One diagonal these are the numbers 1, 14, 27, 40, 53, 66, 79, 92, 105, 118, 131 and 144. On the other diagonal are the numbers 12, 23, 34, 45, 56, 67, 78, 89, 100, 111, 122, and 133.



EXHIBIT 11.9 - NYSE Permanent chart

3) The Diagonal resistance Numbers of Quarter Squares are the third strongest resistance points. These are the numbers 7, 20, 33, 46, 59, 72, 6, 17, 28, 39, 50, 61 and 73, 86, 99, 112, 125, 138, 139, 128, 117, 106, 95 and 84.

4) The Top and Bottom Numbers are next in importance and many times represent important tops and bottoms and halfway points in respect to time and price.

5) The Halfway Point Numbers are next in importance and represent minor tops and bottoms or halfway points in regard to the time and price.

6) The Four Sections of a Square are important for determining resistance of both time and price movement. Divide the square into 4 sections and you get the number 36. Add 0 and you have the number of degrees in the circle. Divide the 36 into 4 minor square and you will get the important number of 9. Divide the number 9 again into four sections and you will get the

A 66 129 172 275 258 201 344 367 439 473 516 559 602 645 668 731 774 817 860 903 946 969 1032 1075 118 1161 1204 1247 1290 133 1376 1419 1462 1576 1548 159	N 1674 1677 1790 1763 1906 186 1869 1835 1878 909 964 917 9150 9183 9236 9278 9399 9385 9408 9451 9494 9537 9580 969
	N 000 NUT NED THE THE THE THE THE THE THE THE TOT DOD ONE ONE ONE ONE OFF DOD DOT DOT DATA AND DET DOT DOT DOT DO
	9 1000 1010 1110 1102 pero 1040 1001 1004 1011 0000 2000 2100 2100
40 85 126 1962 212 256 238 341 384 427 470 513 556 539 642 666 728 771 614 657 300 343 586 1029 1072 115 1156 1201 1244 1267 1330 1373 1416 1459 1502 1545 1580	a Maji Mari (1/11/11/10/1803/1846/1883/1352/1915/2008/2001/2104/2141/2130/2235/2210/2315/2362/2405/2446/2431/2554/2511/2620
39 82 125 168 211 254 297 340 383 426 469 512 555 588 641 664 727 770 813 856 889 342 385 1028 1071 1114 1157 1200 1243 1286 1329 1372 1415 1458 1501 1544 158	17 1600 \$\$73 1716 1759 1002 1845 1888 1831 1974 2017 2080 2103 2146 2189 2232 2275 2318 2361 2404 2447 2490 2533 2576 2619
38 81 124 167 210 255 296 339 382 425 468 511 554 537 640 663 726 768 812 855 888 941 984 1027 1070 1113 1156 1139 1242 1285 1328 1371 1414 1457 1500 1543 1581	6 1829 1672 1715 1758 1801 1844 1887 1890 1973 2016 2059 2182 2145 2188 2231 2274 2317 2360 2403 2446 2489 2532 2575 2618
37 80 123 166 209 252 255 338 381 424 467 510 553 556 639 682 725 768 811 854 887 340 383 1026 1069 1112 1155 1138 1241 1284 1027 1370 1413 1456 1439 1542 158	is 1628 1671 1714 1757 1800 1843 1886 1823 1972 2015 2058 2101 2144 2187 2230 2273 2316 2353 2402 2445 2488 2531 2574 2617
36 73 122 165 208 251 234 337 300 423 466 503 552 535 638 661 724 767 810 853 836 333 382 1025 1068 111 1154 1137 1240 1283 1026 1068 1412 1455 1438 1541 1150	14 1627 1670 1713 1756 1799 1842 1885 1928 1971 2014 2057 2100 2143 2186 2229 2272 2315 2358 2401 2444 2487 2530 2573 2618
35 78 121 164 207 250 233 336 378 422 465 508 551 594 607 680 723 766 809 852 855 338 381 1024 1067 1110 1153 1136 1239 1282 1325 1388 1411 1454 µd57 1540 158:	13 1626 1669 1712 1755 1786 1841 1884 1827 1970 2013 2056 2039 2142 2185 2208 2271 2314 2357 2400 2443 2486 2529 2572 2615
34 77 120 163 216 249 232 335 378 424 66 507 550 533 636 679 722 765 808 851 834 337 380 1023 1066 1109 1152 1155 1238 1281 1324 1367 1410 j#\$\$ 1456 1153 156;	12 1625 1668 1711 1754 1797 1840 1883 1926 1969 2012 2055 2098 2141 2184 2227 2270 2313 2356 2399 2442 2485 2528 2571 2614
33 76 119 162 2015 248 291 334 377 420 463 506 549 552 635 678 721 764 807 850 833 336 379 1022 1065 1108 1151 1184 1237 1280 1323 1386 1459 1452 1455 1588 158	81 1624 1667 1710 1753 1736 1839 1882 1825 1868 2011 2054 2037 2140 2163 2226 2263 2342 2355 2338 2441 2484 2527 2570 2613
32 75 118 161 204 247 230 333 376 419 462 505 548 531 634 677 720 763 806 843 882 885 378 1021 1064 1107 1150 1133 1236 1279 1322 1265 1408 1451 1484 1537 1581	10 1623 1666 1709 1752 1795 1838 1881 1824 1967 2010 2053 2096 2139 2182 2225 2268 2311 2384 2397 2440 2483 2526 2569 2612
31 74 117 160 210 246 289 332 375 418 461 504 647 580 633 676 719 762 805 848 891 334 977 1020 1063 1106 1149 1152 1235 1278 1221 1364 1407 1450 1433 11556 157	"9 1622 1665 1708 1751 1794 1837 1880 1823 1966 2009 2052 2095 2138 2181 2224 2267 2310 2353 2396 2439 2482 2525 2568 2611
30 73 116 153 212 245 288 331 374 417 480 503 546 583 632 675 718 761 804 847 890 533 576 1019 1062 1105 1148 1191 1234 1277 1320 1363 1406 1449 1432 1535 157	78 1421 1464 1707 1750 1733 1836 1879 1822 1965 2008 2051 2034 2137 2180 2223 2266 2309 2352 2395 2488 2481 2524 2567 2610
23 72 115 1158 201 244 287 330 373 416 459 502 545 588 631 674 717 760 800 846 888 332 375 1018 1061 1104 1147 1190 1223 1276 1319 1382 1405 1448 1491 11534 1157	7 1620 1663 1706 1749 1782 1835 1878 1821 1964 2007 2050 2033 2136 2179 2222 2265 2308 2351 2394 2437 2dBp 2523 2566 2605
28 71 114 157 200 243 286 329 372 415 458 501 544 587 600 676 776 759 802 845 888 331 374 1017 1060 1103 1146 1259 1232 1275 1318 1361 1404 1447 1430 1533 157	r 1119 1162 1705 1748 1731 1834 1877 1880 1863 2006 2043 2032 2135 2178 2221 2264 2307 2350 2333 2436 2473 2822 2565 2608
27 70 113 1156 138 242 285 328 371 414 457 500 543 586 628 672 76 758 801 844 887 330 373 1016 1053 1102 jut 188 1231 1274 1317 1360 1403 1446 1489 1532 157	75 1618 1661 1704 1747 1790 1833 1876 1919 1962 2005 2048 2091 2134 2177 2220 2263 2306 2349 2392 2435 2478 2521 2864 2607
26 69 112 155 158 241 264 327 370 413 456 439 542 585 628 671 714 797 800 843 886 329 372 1015 1058 1071 1144 1187 1230 1273 1316 1359 1402 1445 1488 1531 157	% 1617 1660 1703 1746 1789 1832 1875 1918 1961 2004 2047 2090 2133 2176 2219 2262 2305 2348 2391 2434 2477 2520 2563 2808
25 68 111 154 137 240 283 326 383 412 455 438 541 584 627 670 713 756 734 842 885 328 371 104 1057 1100 1143 1186 1223 1272 1315 1358 1401 1444 1487 1530 157.	3 1616 1653 1702 1745 1788 1831 1874 1917 1960 2003 2046 2089 2132 2175 2218 2261 2304 2347 2390 2433 2476 2519 2562 2605
24 67 110 1153 136 239 282 325 366 411 454 497 540 583 626 669 712 755 796 BM 884 327 970 1075 1056 1039 1142 1165 1228 1271 1314 1357 1400 1443 1466 1529 157.	2 1615 1658 1701 1744 1787 1830 1873 1916 1959 2002 2045 2088 2131 2174 2217 2260 2303 2346 2389 2432 2475 2518 2561 2604
20 66 109 152 155 208 281 324 067 410 453 496 539 582 625 668 711 754 787 840 889 386 985 1012 1055 1098 1141 1184 1227 1270 1313 1356 1339 1442 1485 1528 157	71 1614 1657 1700 1743 1786 1829 1872 1915 1958 2001 2044 2087 2130 2173 2216 2259 2302 2345 2388 2431 2474 2517 2560 2603
22 65 108 151 154 237 280 323 366 409 452 455 538 581 624 667 710 753 796 839 882 🕫 968 1011 1054 1097 1140 1163 1226 1269 1312 1355 1338 1441 1424 1527 157	0 1613 1656 1699 1742 1785 1828 1871 1914 1957 2000 2043 2086 2129 2172 2215 2258 2301 2344 2387 2430 2473 2516 2559 2603
21 64 107 150 193 206 279 322 365 408 451 494 537 580 623 666 709 752 795 838 947 324 397 1010 1053 1096 1139 1182 1225 1268 1311 1354 1397 1440 1463 1526 156	9 1612 1655 1698 1741 1784 1827 1870 1913 1956 1939 2042 2085 2128 2171 2214 2257 2300 2343 2386 2429 2472 2515 2558 260
20 63 106 449 192 235 278 321 364 407 450 483 536 579 622 665 708 791 794 947 880 923 966 1009 1052 1095 1138 1181 1224 1267 1100 1353 1396 1439 1482 1525 156	ie 1611 1654 1697 1740 1783 1826 1869 1912 1955 1998 2041 2084 2127 2170 2213 2256 2299 2342 2385 2428 2471 2514 2557 2600
19 62 105 448 191 224 277 520 365 406 449 482 555 578 621 664 707 750 726 836 879 582 365 1008 1084 1037 1180 1223 1266 1009 1552 1355 1438 1481 1524 156	7 1610 1653 1696 1739 1782 1825 1868 1911 1954 1997 2040 2083 2126 2169 2212 2255 2288 2341 2384 2427 2470 2513 2556 258
18 61 104 147 180 233 276 319 362 405 448 491 534 577 620 663 706 Jab 752 835 878 821 364 1007 1050 1030 1135 1222 1265 1308 1351 1334 1437 1480 1523 1561	6 1609 1652 1695 1738 1781 1824 1867 1910 1953 1986 2039 2082 2125 2168 2211 2254 2297 2340 2383 2426 2469 2512 2555 g68
17 60 103 146 183 232 275 318 361 404 447 490 533 576 619 662 705 748 791 834 877 920 963 1006 1049 1092 1136 1178 1221 1264 1307 1350 1333 1436 1479 1522 1561	15 1608 1651 1654 1737 1780 1823 1866 1809 1952 1885 2038 2081 2124 2167 2210 2253 2286 2339 2382 2425 2468 2511 2 654 258
16 59 102 145 188 231 274 317 360 403 446 489 532 575 618 661 704 747 780 833 876 919 982 1005 1048 1091 1134 1175 1220 1283 1306 1349 1392 1435 1478 1521 156	4 1607 1650 1653 1736 1779 1822 1865 1908 1951 1994 2037 2080 2123 2166 2209 2252 2295 2338 2381 2424 2467 2 553 2598
15 58 101 144 187 230 273 316 359 402 445 488 531 574 67 660 703 746 789 832 875 318 361 1004 1047 1090 1133 1176 1210 1262 1305 1346 1331 1434 1477 1520 156:	13 1606 1649 1692 1735 1778 1821 1864 1907 1950 1983 2036 2079 2122 2165 2208 2251 2294 2337 2380 2423 3466 2509 2552 2598
14 57 100 143 186 229 272 315 358 401 444 487 530 573 616 659 702 745 788 831 874 917 960 1003 1046 1089 1132 1175 1218 1204 1347 1390 1433 1476 1519 156	12 1605 1648 1691 1734 1777 1820 1863 1906 1949 1992 2035 2078 2121 2164 2207 2250 2293 2336 2379 3422 2465 2508 2551 2594
13 55 39 142 165 228 271 314 357 400 443 486 549 572 615 658 701 744 787 830 873 316 559 1002 1045 1088 1131 1174 1217 1260 1004 1346 1383 1432 1475 1518 156	51 1604 1647 1690 1733 1776 1819 1862 1905 1948 1991 2034 2077 2120 2163 2206 2249 2282 2335 3878 2421 2464 2507 2558 2583
12 55 38 141 184 227 270 313 356 339 442 465 528 571 614 657 700 743 786 829 872 315 358 1001 1044 1087 1130 1173 1216 1259 1302 1345 1388 1431 1474 1517 156	10 1603 1646 1689 1732 1775 1818 1861 1904 1947 1990 2033 2076 2119 2162 2205 2248 2291 2654 2377 2420 2463 2506 2549 2538
11 54 97 140 183 226 269 312 355 398 441 484 527 570 613 656 699 742 785 828 871 314 957 1000 1043 1086 1129 1172 1215 1258 1301 1344 1392 1430 1473 1516 155	19 1602 1645 1688 1731 1774 1817 1860 1903 1346 1989 2002 2075 2118 2161 2204 2247 2690 2333 2376 2419 2462 2505 2548 259
10 53 56 139 182 225 288 311 354 387 440 483 526 569 612 655 698 741 784 827 870 313 356 899 1042 1085 1128 1171 1214 1257 1300 1343 1385 1424 1472 1515 155	ie 1601 1644 1667 1730 1773 1816 1859 1902 1945 1988 2031 2074 2117 2160 2203 2 8 46 2289 2332 2375 2418 2461 2504 2547 2590
3 52 55 138 181 224 287 310 320 336 433 482 525 568 611 654 637 740 763 826 869 312 355 598 1041 1084 1127 1170 1213 1256 1239 1042 1035 1428 149 1514 155	i7 1600 1643 1686 1723 1772 1815 1858 1901 1944 1987 2000 2073 2116 2159 a802 2245 2288 2331 2374 2417 2460 2503 2546 2588
8 51 84 117 190 223 246 245 255 128 141 521 527 610 653 686 739 762 825 868 91 851 597 100 1003 1126 1169 1255 1298 1341 1341 1427 1470 1519 155	a 1588 1642 1685 1778 1771 1814 1857 1900 1943 1886 2028 2072 2115 2 9 58 22011 2244 2287 2300 2373 2416 2459 2502 2545 2588
7 50 80 115 179 200 205 508 511 34 47 40 50 564 60 650 685 708 78 84 867 90 40 40 105 166 100 105 166 101 105 140 106 140 146 166 170	NE 11598 1641 1684 1727 1770 1813 1855 1899 1942 1985 2028 2071 244 2157 2200 2243 2285 2329 2415 2453 2501 2544
	A 15-27 BAIN 15-29 1726 1726 1510 1512 1525 1548 1941 1984 2027 2020 211 215 216 203 2025 2208 2277 2441 2457 2500 2513 258
	a 100 Mar 100 H20 H00 H20 H00 100 H01 H00 H01 H00 200 210 210 210 210 210 200 201 211 21
	1 1000 1000 1000 1100 1100 1100 1011 1000 1000 1000 1000 2000 2000 2000 2001 2000 2001 2000 2000 2000 2000 2000
	n www.mww.mwm.maw.mwm.mwm.mov.move.move.move.move.euco.euco.euco.euco.euco.euco.euco.euc
	n 1004 1001 1100 1120 1100 1002 1002 1002
	no novo novo novo navo naze rinna novo novo posta navo navo zveze zveze zveze zveze zveze zveze zveze zveze zvez Na navo novo navo naze nava navo navo navo navo navo zveze
1 44 or suu iru zno zno zna unz uko 388 431 474 517 580 660 668 688 732 775 818 861 594 547 390 1003 1076 1119 1162 1205 1246 1231 1334 1377 1420 1463 1506 154	a 1825 2005 1829 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 1997 19
N3-1ABLE	

EXHIBIT 11.10 - Square of 43 chart

most important minor division of time and space of 2.25. Now, lets go back to the original 4 sections of the square. Moving over one section on the square of 36 you will reach the square of its own place. Next, when you move over two sections to the number 72, it reaches its halfway point. Three sections over to the number 108 it reaches its third resistance point which in many cases is a very difficult point to penetrate. The fourth resistance point is the hardest of all to penetrate which ends with the key number of 144. If it gets through the fourth section it will then be in the second square of 12 which is 145 to 288. If it maintains this price level with falling back into the first square it will then attempt to go through each section of the second square trying to penetrate each section of the squares until it finally fails. Most bull or bear campaigns usually fail in the fourth square of 12. In every consecutive square

Γ																																			_	<hr/>						_		_		_	
ľ	\$ 7;	108	144	180	216	252 2	288	324	360	396	432	468	504	540	576	612	648	684	720	756	792	828	864	900	336	972	1008	1044	1080	1116	1152	1188	1224	1260	1298	1362	1368 14	34 14	40 147	76 15	512 154	48 15	84 162	0 165	56 1633	2 1728	3 1764
1	চ ই	107	143	179	215	251 2	287	323	359	395	431	467	503	539	575	611	647	683	719	755	791	827	863	899	935	971	1007	1043	1079	1115	1151	1187	1223	1253	1295	1331	1367 14	03 14	,39 147	75 1	511 15/	47 15	/83 161	3 165	55 169	1 1727	7 1763
:	4 7	106	142	178	214	250 2	286	322	358	394	430	466	502	538	574	610	646	682	718	754	790	826	862	898	934	970	1006	1042	1078	1114	1150	1186	1922	1258	1294	1330	1366 18	Q2 14	i38 147	74 1	510 15/	46 15	62 161	8 165	54 1631	0 1726	6 1762
;	3 6:	105	TAL	177	213	249 2	285	321	357	393	429	465	501	537	573	603	645	681	717	753	789	825	861	897	933	969	1005	1041	1077	1113	1149	1165	1221	1257	1293	1329	1365 14	01 14	187 14	73 18	509 15	45 15	581 161	7 165	53 168	3 1725	5 1761
	2 6	104	140	176	212	248 2	284	320	356	392	428	464	500	536	572	608	644	680	716	752	788	824	860	896	932	968	1004	1040	1076	1112	148	1184	1220	1256	1292	1328	364 14	00 14	136 1 8 °	72 18	508 15-	44 15	80 1 61	16 165	52 168	8 172/	\$ 1760
	1 6	103	139	175	211	247 2	283	319	355	391	427	463	499	535	571	607	643	679	715	751	787	823	859	895	931	967	1003	1039	1075	দা	1147	1183	1219	1255	1291	1327	1363 13	99 1 4	435 14	71 1	507 15	43 15	573 161	.5 16 [,]	51 168	7 172	3 1759
	0.6	102	138	174	210	246 2	82	318	354	390	426	462	498	534	570	606	642	678	714	759	786	822	858	894	330	966	1002	1038	1075	1110	1146	1182	1218	1254	1239	1326	362 13	98 14	134 14	70 f	506 15	42 F	(78 161	14. 167	50 168	6 172:	2 1758
Ľ	• •	101	100	170	2009		200	247	050		105	464	497	500	500	60E		677	740	749	705	004	057		000	00F	1001	5	1070	****		4404	1017	1052	*100	1020	1061 10	07 14	100 14	co 4	FOF 15		to 101		10 100	F 170	4 4787
Ľ		101	101	110	200	240 0		2			420	401	401	500	505	000	041	011	710	140	100	021	001		323	303			1073	1103	1140	1101	IEIT	1200	1203	1020	1001 10	21 14	00 140	50 K	100 100	61 10		5 M94	10 100	> 112	i irər
ľ	8 6	100	136	172	208	244 2	280	310	352	388	424	460	436	532	568	604	640	676	712	748	784	820	855	892	328	364	1000	1036	W 72	1108	1144	1180	1216	1252	1288	1324	1360 13	96 14	.32 146	56 18	j04 154	40 15	76 164	2 164	18 1684	1720	J 1756
1	7 6:	33	135	171	207	243 2	279	315	354	387	423	459	435	531	567	603	639	675	711	747	783	819	855	891	327	963	999	1035	1071	1107	1143	1179	1215	1251	1287	1323	1359 13	35 14	J31 146	57 15	503 153	39 15	-75 161	1 164	17 168:	3 1718	/ 1755
1	6 6;	38	134	170	206	242 2	278	314	350	386	422	458	494	530	566	602	638	674	710	746	782	818	854	890	9 26	962	998	1034	1070	1106	1142	1178	1214	1250	1286	1322	1358 13	34 14	-30 146	ó6 15	502 153	38 15	74 161	0 164	\$6 168;	2 1718	1754
2	56	97	133	169	205	241 2	277	313	349	385	424	457	493	529	565	601	637	673	709	745	781	817	853	86 3	325	961	997	1033	1069	1105	1141	1177	1213	1249	1285	1321	1357 13	93 14	29 146	65 19	501 153	37 15	73 160	9 164	\$5 168	1 1742	1753
1	4 6	36	132	168	204	240 2	276	312	348	384	420	6 36	432	528	564	600	636	672	708	744	780	816	952	888	324	960	336	1032	1068	1104	1140	1176	1212	1248	1284	1320	1356 13	92 14	,28 14F	64 15	500 15:	36 15	72 160	.8 16A	44 168	0 1716	5 1752
2	3 5:	95	131	167	203	239 2	275	311	347	383	419	455	431	527	563	599	635	671	707	743	779	815	851	887	923	959	995	1031	1067	1103	1139	1175	1211	1247	1283	1319	1355 13	91 14	146	63 14	199 15:	35 15	571 160	17 167	43 167	9 1715	5 1751
1	2 5	94	130	166	202	238 2	274	310	346	382	418	454	490	526	562	598	634	670	706	742	718	814	850	886	322	958	334	1030	10 66	1102	1138	1174	1210	1246	1282	1318	1354 13	90 14	126 14(62 1V	138 15:	34 15	i70 160	16 164	42 167	8 1714	1750
	1 5	93	129	165	201	237 2	273	309	345	381	417	453	489	525	561	597	633	669	705	741	777	813	849	885	921	957	993	1029	1065	1101	1137	1173	1209	1245	1281	1317	1353 13	89 14	125 14	61 14	197 15:	33 15	i69 160	15 16	41 167	7 1713	3 1749
2	0 5	32	128	164	200	236 2	272	308	344	380	416	452	488	524	560	536	632	668	704	740	776	812	848	884	320	956	992	1028	1064	1100	1136	1172	1208	1244	1280	1316	1352 13	88 14	124 141	60 1×	436 15:	32 15	368 16C	14 162	40 167	6 1712	2 1748
	9 5!	91	127	163	199	235 2	271	307	343	379	415	451	487	523	553	595	631	<u>567</u>	703	739	775	811	847	883	919	955	991	1027	1063	1099	1135	1171	1207	1243	1273	1315	1351 13	87 14	423 14'	59 IV	495 15	31 15	367 160	13 16:	39 167	5 171'	1 1747
	8 5	90	126	162	138	234 2	270	306	342	378	614	459	486	522	558	594	6/30	686	702	738	774	810	846	882	918	954	330	1026	1062	1098	1134	1170	1206	1242	1278	1314	350 13	86 14	422 14'	58 1/	494 15	30 IE	66 160	12 16:	38 167	4 1710) 1746
	7 5	89	125	161	197	233 5	6.9	305	341	377	A13	449	485	521	557	5/3	629	665	701	737	773	809	845	881	917	953	989	1025	1061	1097	1133	116.9	1205	1241	1277	1313	349 13	85 1/	4.21 14	57 1	193 15	29.15	65 16/	1 16:	37 167	3 170:	9 1745
			104	***	101	000 0		204	240	076				500	4		600		700	2	770				046	000		1000	4060	40.94	1100		1004	1040	4074	1010	1040 10		100 14		100 101	 			06 467	0 170	
	• •	00	124	100	100	202 e	200	004	340	510	912	640	404	- 520 - L		002	020	004	100	1.30	<u> </u>	000	044	000	310	395	300	1024	1000	1030	1102	1100	1204	1240	1210	NIZ	1040 10	24 14	20 14:	20 14	102 102	GI 02	04 100	0 100	>0 1011	2 1700) 1144
	5 5	87	123	153	135	231 2	267	303	339	375	411	447	483	913	555	531	627	663	633	735	(A	807	843	873	315	351	387	1023	พรฮ	1035	1131	1167	1203	1238	1275	1311	6347 13	53 14	J13 145	55 14	131 152	27 15	53 153	3 163	35 167	1 170	/ 1/43
ľ	4 5	86	122	158	194	230 2	266	302	338	374	410	446	\$ 62	518	554	590	626	662	698	734	770	806	842	878	914	950	986	1022	1058	1094	1130	1166	1202	1238	1274	1310	1346 13	32 14	JIS 145	54 14	JBO 152	26 15	62 153	8 163	34 1671	ə 1706	3 1742
ľ	3 4:	85	121	157	193	229 2	265	391	337	373	403	A 45	481	517	553	589	625	661	697	733	769	805	841	877	913	949	985	1021	1057	1093	1129	1165	1201	1237	1273	1309	1345 13	81 14	617 145	53 14	189 152	25 15	61 159	7 163	33 1663	3 1705	5 8741
ľ	2 4	84	120	156	192	228 2	264	300	336	372	M 08	444	480	516	552	588	624	660	696	732	768	804	840	876	912	948	984	1020	1056	1092	1128	1164	1200	1236	1272	1308	1344 13	80 14	116 145	52 14	188 152	24 15	60 153	6 163	32 1661	8 \$70	1740
	1 4	83	119	155	191	227 2	263	299	335	371	407	443	479	515	551	587	623	653	695	731	767	803	839	875	ગેમ	947	983	1019	1055	1091	1127	1163	1199	1235	1271	1307	1343 13	79 14	115 14	51 14	187 152	23 15	59 159	.5 163	31 1667	7 1703	3 1739
ŀ	0 4	82	118	154	139	226 2	262	298	2/34	370	406	442	478	514	550	586	622	658	694	730	766	802	838	874	910	346	982	1018	1054	1090	1126	1162	1198	1234	1270	1306	1342 13	78 14	414 145	50 1/	186 152	22 15	/58 153	a she	30 1664	5 1702	2 1738
	9 4!	81	117	153	189	225 3	261	257	333	369	405	441	477	513	549	585	621	657	693	729	765	801	837	873	909	945	pee	1017	1053	1089	1125	1161	1197	1233	1269	1305	1341 13	77 14	¥13 147	49 14	185 15	21 15	157 153	is 162	29 1667	5 170	1 1737
	B 4	80	116	152	188	224)	260	296	332	368	404	440	476	512	548	584	620	656	692	728	764	800	836	872	308	944	980	10%	1052	1088	1124	1160	1196	1232	1268	1304	340 13	76 14	\$12 14	48 1/	184 15;	20 A	56 153	12 162	28 166	4 170	0 1736
	7 4:	79	115	151	187	yes s	259	295	331	367	403	439	475	511	547	583	619	655	691	727	763	799	835	871	307	943	979	1015	1051	1087	1123	1159	1195	1231	1267	1303	1339 13	75 1×	411 14	47 1×	483 <i>,</i> 15	19 15	i55 1 58	31 162	27 166	3 163	9 1735
	5 4;	78	114	150	186	222 2	258	294	330	366	402	438	474	510	546	582	618	654	690	726	762	798	834	870	396	942	978	1014	1050	1086	1122	1158	1134	1230	1266	1302	1338 13	74 14	410 14-	46 <i>X</i>	k82 15	,18 15	354 158	10 167	26 166	2 163/	3 1734
	54	77	113	24.9	185	221 2	257	293	329	365	401	437	473	503	545	581	617	653	683	725	761	797	833	869	305	941	977	1013	1049	1085	IIZA	1157	1193	1229	1265	1301	1337 13	73 14	409 XK	45 1	481 15	517 IF	53 158	19 167	25 166	1 169	7 1733
		76	to	14.8	184	220 9	256	292	328	364	400	436	479	508	544	580	616	652	688	724	760	796	832	868	394	940	376	1012	1048	1084	1120	1156	1192	1228	1264	1300	336 13	72 W		aa 1.	180 15	(16 14	(52 154	18 16	24 166	0 169	6 1739
	- 4" - ^.	4		447	10-9	e		194	207	260	200	400		500	540	E70	640	654	607	700	750	795	0.04	000	900	400	975	1011	1017	4092	1110			1007	406.2	1000	1000 W			40.4	170 17		100 FE4 474		1001	- 1000	E 4704
	 			147	10-3	6 UIS		600	001		000	405	4/1	our	043	ord	010	001	001	120	100	100	001	007	000	000	010	1011	1047	1003		100	1104	1661	1203	1200	noo po	n 14	or 144	+0 14	170 ID	10 13	501 10-	1 102	.0 105	, 10di	- 1101
		74	110	146	182	218 2	:54	230	326	362	398	434	470	506	542	578	614	650	080	722	758	794	830	866	392	938	374	1010	1045	1082	1118	1154	1130	1256	1262	1236	ro34 13	r0 14	UG 144	¥2 14	unia 151	14 15	ઝ ચ 158	o 162	1651	5 1694	5 1730
Y	1 3	73	103	145	181	217 2	253	289	325	361	397	433	463	505	541	577	613	643	685	721	757	793	829	865	301	937	973	1009	1045	1081	1117	1153	1189	1225	1264	1 297	1333 13	39 14	.05 14	41 14	J77 15 [.]	13 15	43 158	5 162	21 165	7 1633	3 1729
36	-TABL	E																																													

EXHIBIT 11.11 - Square of 36 chart

price and time movement volatility increases proportionally. Which is why many times a market ends its campaign with a price blow off

THE SQUARE OF 19 CHART

Exhibit 11.5 shows the square of 19 chart which is a very important table which is 19 up and 19 over. This square is often called the square of the circle because it proves the circle. The square of 19 x 19 ends at 361 which is just one over the 360 degrees in the circle. At the major center is the number 181 which is one over the half the circle 180 degrees. This illustration shows that when we reach the number 181 we are crossing the center and on the other side of the 360 degree circle. It is important to know that many price movements end with the square of 19.

THE SQUARE OF 20 CHART

In Exhibit 11.6 the number 20 which represents the number of trading days in the normal month, and the 18th division of the circle is quite important for measuring both time and price. The first method of counting by man was probably with his hand which consists of 5 fingers. Finally he probably incorporated his toes which eventually developed into a system of $4 \ge 20$. It was then finally possible with a combination of finder counting and memory to reach even larger numbers. Many of the civilizations of the world have used a 20 finger number system. This is the chart Gann used for the New York Stock Exchange. He called it his NYSE Permanent Chart.

THE SQUARE OF 27 CHART

Exhibit 11.8 shows the square of 27 chart 27 up and 27 over which ends at 729 is close to 720 or 2 times the circle. The number also adds up to the important number 9 the end of your basic number series. Dividing the square of 12 months gives 60.75 years or 1/6 the circle. Dividing each quarterly square then gives 15.19 years and the halfway point is 7.59 years close to the 7 1/2 year cycle.

THE SQUARE OF 36 CHART

In exhibit 11.11 the square of 36 chart 36 up and 36 over which ends at 1296 is important for measuring all time and price movements and resistance points. It adds up to the important number 9 and adding a zero gives the important 360 degrees in a circle. This is a very important square for determining tops and bottoms of the market. The top of the square numbers tend to be highs and the low and mid point numbers are usually lows in the market.

THE SQUARE OF 52 CHART

The square of 52 chart which is 52 up and 52 across is a very important square

representing the 52 weeks in a year. The square of 52 is 2704, which is 7 years and 5 months very close to the important 7 1/2 year cycle or 90 months.

THE SQUARE OF 90 CHART

The square of 90 chart which is 90 up and 90 across which ends at 8100 is an important square. The number 90 is one quarter of the circle and adds up to the important number 9. Dividing the 8100 by 365 calendar days gives you 22.19 years to work out the vibration of each square of 90. Dividing this by 4 gives you 5.54 years or 287 weeks which ends the second square of 12 and divided by 3 gives 7.40 years which basically is the 7 1/2 year cycle.



EXHIBIT 11.12 - 1 - Tritable chart

VARIABLE LOW SQUARES

Squares can be worked up for specific stocks and commodities based on their contract low. For example on December 28, 1932 March wheat had a low at 43 cents per bushel. The square or balancing of the price is 43 days, 43 weeks, 43 months. The square of 43 (43 up and 43 across) can be worked up for March wheat to use for time and resistance points. (See Exhibit 11.10) For September Wheat the low was made on December 29, 1932 at 45 1/4 cents per bushel. Therefore for this contract one must use the square of 45 to determine its resistance points.



EXHIBIT 11.13 - 2 - Tritable chart

SETTING UP CONTRACT HIGH SQUARES

Besides using lows to set up squares one can also use contract highs. Use the all time high of a particular contract for its balancing square. For example, March Wheat had a high of \$6.45 on February 26, 1974. Therefore use the square of 81 (6.45 / 8 = .80626) as it's balancing square for this top.

SETTING UP CONTRACT RANGE SQUARES

Besides using contract highs and lows, contract ranges can also be used to set up balancing squares. March Wheat had an all time high of 6.45 and an all time low of .43. The difference between the two is 6.02. Therefore a balancing square of .70 (5.59 / 8 = .6988) per bushel can be set up to indicate resistance points.

COMBINING SQUARES FOR RESISTANCE POINTS

It is important to combine the natural squares, especially the square of 9 and 12 with the contract high, low and range squares to indicate time and price resistance points for each stock or commodity. When natural time square points complement the same points given by the variable squares it creates an extra strong point for resistance.

LOW/ HIGH NUMBER SQUARES /NATURAL TIME SQUARES

It is possible to use contract low prices to determine intra cycle resistance points within a time period. For example March Wheat had a low on December 28, 1932 at 43 cents per bushel. A square of 12 with an intra cycle of 43 can be set up to determine the monthly future cycle points. Since the low occurred on the 12th month in 1932, label the first row as 1932 and circle the number 12. Therefore every 12 thereafter that occurs in the chart will be an important cycle month. It is also possible to use contract high prices to determine intra cycle resistance points within a time period. For example March Wheat had a high of 645 on 2/26/74. Divide this number by 8 to get it down to a smaller number under 100 to make a square with. This gives the number 80.625 or round to the number 81. Therefore the square of 12 can be set up with an intra cycle number of 81 to give important monthly cycle points.

TRITABLE CHARTS

The triangle table charts illustrated in this chapter were put in Gann's course, but were not explained. We have programmed the Excel spread sheet template to do these charts also. There are two types as illustrated in the examples. The odd type that starts with the number one on the bottom and the even type that starts with two numbers on the bottom. This type of table chart works much the same as the square type. It illustrates support/resistance on the flat top and on the rising sides.

NATURAL TIME SQUARE INTERVALS AND INTRA CYCLES

Intra cycle contract high and low points can be set up within all natural time squares. Squares can be set up on the smallest interval 1/4 hourly points up to larger intervals of monthly points. The following is a listing of some of the most commonly used intervals. It is important to note the low number such as 43 should be monthly points and high numbers such as 645 should be daily points.

1/4 hourly points - square of 24 (if contract trades 6 hrs per day) hourly points - square of 6 (if the contract trades 6 hrs per day) daily points - square of 260 (trading days per year) weekly points - square of 52 (weeks per year) monthly points - square of 12 (months of the year)

NATURAL RESISTANCE LEVELS

Natural resistance levels are based upon natural law and can be applied to the measurement of both time and price. These levels come from base numbers or divisions of the circle. At these points commodities and stocks show strong time and price resistance levels. Table charts can be set up based on these numbers.

BASE NUMBERS

Base of 5 - 5, 10, 15, 20, 25, 30, 35, 40, 45, 50, 55, 60, 65, 70, etc. Base of 9 - 9, 18, 27, 36, 45, 54, 63, 72, 81, 90, 99, 108, 117, 126, etc. Base of 10 - 10, 20, 30, 40, 50, 60, 70. 80, 90, 100, 110, 120, 130, etc. Base of 12 - 12, 24, 48, 72, 96, 120, 144, 168, 192, 216, 240, 264, etc. Base of 20 - 20, 40, 60, 80, 100, 120, 140, 160, 180, 200, 220, 240, etc. Base of 25 - 25, 50, 75, 100, 125, 150, 175, 200, 225, 250, 275, 300, etc.

DIVISIONS OF THE CIRCLE BY 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 12

360 / 2 = 180, 360 360 / 3 = 120, 240, 360 360 / 4 = 90, 180, 270, 360 360 / 5 = 72, 144, 216, 288, 360 360 / 6 = 60, 120, 180, 240, 300, 360 360 / 7 = 51, 102, 154, 206, 256, 309, 360 360 / 8 = 45, 90, 135, 180, 225, 270, 315, 360 360 / 9 = 40, 80, 120, 160, 200, 240, 280, 320, 360360 / 12 = 30, 60, 90, 120, 150, 180, 210, 240, 270, 300, 330, 360

THE VIBRATION NUMBER

Every stock or commodity will have its own vibration number that it trades by. It will trade within the square of that number. The number is based on one of several factors. The most common is the birthday or incorporation of the stock or commodity. If the stock was incorporated on December 21, 1945 its number would be 3 determined from adding 2 + 1. This is usually hard to find, but can be found in exchange or corporation records. The next possible basis for the vibration number is the first day of trade on the exchange. It is also possible the number might be found from the all time high or low of the stock or commodity. It is necessary to experiment with several of the possible numbers that one finds using the above basis. Use trial and error with several numbers until you find the one that fits best. Once you find it, it will be clear that it works in all cases. See Exhibit 11.14.

NUMBERS GIVEN TO DATES OF THE PERIODS OF THE YEAR

Stocks or commodities that started trading the following dates of the month are ruled by the numbers indicated. They generally will be strongest during their dates or the periods of the year indicated.

Started Trading	Ruling Number	Favorable Period
1st, 10th, 19th, 28th	1	Mar 21 - Apr 19th
2nd, 11th, 20th, 29th	2	Jun 20 - Jul 20th
3rd, 12, 21st, 30th	3	Feb 19th-Mar 27th, Nov 21-Dec 27
4th, 13th, 22nd, 31st	4	Jun 21 - Jul 27, Jul 21 - Aug 27
5th, 14th, 23rd	5	May 21 - Jun 27, Aug 21, Sep 27
6th, 15th, 24th	6	Apr 20th, May 27, Sep 21, Oct 27
7th, 16th, 25th	7	Jun 21 - Jul 27
8th, 17th, 26th	8	Dec 31 - Jan 27, Feb 19 - Feb 26
9th, 18th, 27th	9	Mar 21 - Apr 26, Oct 21 - Nov 27

NUMBERS GIVEN TO DAYS OF THE WEEK

The following are vibration numbers given to the days of the week. Stocks or commodities will be strongest on the day that vibrates their number.

Day	Number
Sunday	1, 4
Monday	2,7
Tuesday	9
Wednesday	5
Thursday	3
Friday	6
Saturday	8

SAME NUMBER OF YEARS, MONTHS, WEEKS AND DAYS

You should check back in the record of both stocks and commodities and you will find that they advance and decline on the same number years many times up to 3 to 6 to 9 years at a time. For example if a stock advanced during the year of 1915. Add the number 3, 6, and 9 to that data to see if the stock advanced during those years. The dates would be 1918, 1921 and 1924. Some time the market will follow those years exactly to the day, week or month. Sometimes you will have a cycle inversion and the market will do the opposite of those years. You can keep going back 3,6, and 9 years back to 100 years if you have the necessary data. Using this method you can forecast months, weeks and days ahead of time. From this method you can many times determine the weak and strong points of the years based on months, weeks and even days.

Year 1915 + 3 = 1918 + 3 = 1921 + 3 = 1924 + 3 = 1927 + 3 = 1930 + 3 = 1933+ 3 = 1936 + 3 = 1939 + 3 = 1942

Using this method you should print out the charts and overlay them on top of each other to see if you can find similiar trend pattern between the years. Sometimes you will find a slight shift of time. Sometime it will be exact. Anniversary days of major highs and lows many times will come out to the day.



EXHIBIT 11.14 Vibration base number example

COMPOUND NUMBERS AND THEIR MEANINGS

Here is a way to tell whether a day will be favorable or unfavorable for a stock or commodity. It should be of great value to anyone who uses it. Now give your attention and concentration to the following system which I will try to explain as briefly as possible. To find whether a day in the month is favorable or unfavorable to a commodity the simplest rule is to work out the numeric value of the name of the stock or commodity. Determine that value by assigning a numeric value to each letter of the name the commodity is referred to. Add to this number its vibration number and the date of the month and check to see it is a good or bad number. Follow the below charts and example to guide you.

In this example Corn is figured this way.

 $\begin{array}{ll} C = 3, \, O = 7, \, R = 2, \, N = 5 \, (add \ 3, \, 7, \, 2 \, and \, 5 = 17, \, and \, 1 + 7 = 8) \\ Corn & = 8 \\ Vibration \, number & = 3 \\ Total & = 11 \end{array}$

COMPOUND NUMBER CHART

FAVORABLE + AND UNFAVORABLE -

10 +, 11 -, 12 -, 13 0, 14 +, 15 +, 16 -, 17 0, 18 -, 19 +, 20 0, 21 +, 22 -, 23 +, 24 +, 25 +, 26 -, 27 +, 28 +, 29 +, 30 0, 31 0, 32 +, 34 +, 35 -, 36 +, 37 +, 38 +, 39 0, 40 0, 41 +, 42 +, 43 -, 44 -, 45 +, 46 +, 47 +, 48 0, 49 0, 50 +, 51 +, 51 -

Corn	+Vibration Number	+Date=	= Total	Expectation
8	3	13th	24	Favorable
8	3	14th	25	Favorable
8	3	15th	26	Unfavorable

CONCLUSION

Table charts are important for understanding the basis for all movement in the stock and commodity markets. Most of the theories learned in this chapter can be transferred to the study of bar charts. Study and apply the principles of this chapter to trading and you will be rewarded.
COMMODITY MARKET BIRTH DATES

The following commodities are given with their first trading day and the vibration number that rules them.

Commodity	Date	Vibration Number
Chicago Board of Trade		
Corn	1877	3
Wheat	1877	3
Oats	1877	3
Soybeans	Oct 5, 1936	5
Soybeans Oil	Jul 17, 1950	8
Soybean Meal	Aug 19, 1951	1
GNMA	Aug 1, 1968	1
Treasury Bonds	Dec 1, 1969	1
Chicago Mercantile Exchange		
Pork Bellies	Sept 18, 1961	9
Hogs	Feb 28, 1966	1
Cattle	Nov. 30, 1964	3
Lumber	Oct 1, 1969	1
British Pound	May 16, 1972	7
Canadian Dollar	May 16, 1972	7
Deutschemark	May 16, 1972	7
Japanese Yen	May 16, 1972	7
Swiss Franc	May 16, 1972	7
Mexican Peso	May 16, 1972	7
U.S. Treasury Bills	Jan 6, 1976	6
Comex Exchange		
Copper	July 5, 1933	5
Silver	Jun 15, 1931	6
Gold	Dec 31, 1974	4
Kansas City Board of Trade Wheat	1876	3
New York Cocoa Exchange Cocoa	Oct 1, 1925	1

CHAPTER 12

TIME AND PRICE CHARTS

The markets vibrate around these charts.

This chapter goes into the explanation and use of Gann's master time and price charts. Perhaps the most interesting of these charts are the odd and even square charts. The odd chart is commonly known as the square of 9 and the even chart is known as the square of 4. The square of 9 has the number 1 at the center and spirals clockwise around the square. The even chart has four numbers in the center 1, 2, 3, and 4. It spirals counter clockwise around the square. Each of the chart's parameter is divided into dates and degrees of the year that go counter clockwise. Each circle of the square of nine ends with an number that squares out (9, 25, 49, 81, 121, 169, 225, 289 etc.). Each circle of the square of 4 ends with an even number that squares out (4, 16, 36, 64, 100, 144, 176, 256 etc.).

Which of the two charts to use depends on the total days in the contract from beginning to end. You must look up to see when the first day of trade was and look up the last day of trade. If there is an even number of days in the contract use the square of 4. If there are an odd number of days in the contract use the square of 9. There are many different ways to use these charts. One useful way is to set the beginning day of trade at 1 in the center of the square. As the contract trades out in time, you can see resistance at the completion of each circle in the square. You can often tell which chart (odd or even) a commodity is following by where it ends in time. Use calendar days for this timing. The Excel template available to you has the ability to be configured into either entirely dates, numbers or a combination of both. That means you can set the center to the beginning data and price of the contract and easily see all of the resistance dates and prices all the way out. The center can also be set to a major low or high date of price to see all of the resistance dates and prices.

THE SQUARE OF 9

This is a very important chart because nine is our number's system key. Nine is the basis of everything. When we count up to the number 9 we must start the count over to get to 10 (9 +1). Look at the square of nine chart in this chapter. The first major opposition is at 9 x 9 = 81. This completes the first

square of 9. The second square of 9 ends at 162, the third square of 9 ends at 243, the fourth square of nine ends at 324 and the fifth square ends at 361 (19 x 19). Watch for these major oppositions when the market is trading in both time and price resistance. Important resistance points are on the fixed cross which is on the horizontal and vertical lines intersecting the center. These are the numbers 6, 19, 40, 69, 106, 151, 204, 265, 334 etc. going to the right. Going to the left are the numbers 2, 11, 28, 53, 86, 127, 176, 233, 298. Vertically the numbers are 4, 15, 34, 61, 96, 129, 190, 249 and 316 and down vertically the numbers are 8, 23, 46, 77, 116, 163, 218, 281 and 352. The cardinal cross numbers are also very important resistance points. These numbers are 3, 13, 31, 57, 91, 133, 183, 241 307, 7, 21, 43, 73, 111, 157, 211, 273, 343, 5, 17, 37, 65, 101, 145, 197, 267, 325, 9, 25, 49, 81, 121, 169, 225, 289 and 361.

The square of 9 chart is an excellent tool to help you forecast the markets. This tool can help you to significantly increase your accuracy in forecasting changes of trend in the market. Look at the square of 9 chart and find the number 496. Moving up on the chart the market finds price support as follows:

Degrees	Support/Resistance
45	485
90	474
120	463
180	452

Moving down on the chart the market finds support and resistance in the following areas in the degrees of 45, 90, 120, and 180.

Degrees	Support/Resistance
45	507
90	518
120	529
180	541

The market will also find support and resistance with dates at those same areas of price. For example on March 21 you will find the following resistance and support on these dates.

Degrees	Support/Resistance
45	May 6
90	June 21
120	Aug 8
180	Sep 23

Look on the chart at the numbers running down from the center to bottom left

date of November 7. They are squares of odd numbers and represent support and resistance. The numbers are 1, 9, 25, 49, 81, 121, 169, 225, 361, 441, 529, 625, 729, 841, 961, 1089. The numbers running up from the center to May 6 are even squares of even numbers. The numbers are 4, 16, 36, 64, 100, 144, 196, 256, 324, 400, 484, 576, 676, 784, 900, 1024. The numbers 90 degrees between these squares of both even and odd numbers are midway points of support and resistance in both time and price.

The major trend in both time and price is the year and minor trends are the divisions of the year which the square of 9 chart gives. Major trends will reverse most of the time with the minor trends as follows using the following trends:

Γ	5-Aug	5-5-40 5-2-5-101 2-2-5-101 2-2-5-101 1-10-100 1-10-100 1-10-100 1-10-100 1-10-	7-May	5-May	44
136	3-Aug	833 1834 1835 1836 1837 1836 1837 1838 1830 1901 1902 1903 1804 1905 1806 1907 1908 1909 1910 1911 1912 1913 1914 1915 1916 1917 1916 1917 1918 1913 1920 1921 1822 1826 1826 1927 1928 1826 1927 1928 1830 1831 1832 1833 1834 1835 1835	5 1937	3-May	42
138	11-Aug	82 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 172 17	5 1938	1-May	40
140	13-Auç	891 1722 1561 1562 1563 1564 1565 1566 1567 1568 1583 1570 1571 1572 1573 1574 1575 1576 1577 1578 1573 1580 1581 1582 1583 1584 1585 1586 1587 1588 1589 1591 1592 1593 1594 1585 1591	5 1939	29-Apr	38
142	15-Auç	390 1721 1560 1407 1408 1409 1410 1411 1412 1413 1414 1415 1416 1417 1418 1419 1420 1421 1422 1423 1424 1425 1426 1427 1428 1429 1430 1431 1422 1423 1424 1445 1602	7 1940	27-Apr	36
14.4	17-Aug	889 1720 1555 4406 1261 1262 1263 1264 1265 1266 1267 1268 1269 1270 1271 1272 1273 1274 1275 1276 1277 1278 1279 1260 1281 1282 1283 1284 1265 1268 1267 1268 1269 1280 1281 1282 1283 1284 1265 1266 1277	1941	25-Apr	34
146	19-Aug	880 1719 1558 1405 1260 1123 1124 1125 1126 1127 1128 1129 1130 1131 1132 1133 1134 1135 1136 1137 1138 1139 1140 1141 1142 1143 1144 1145 1146 1147 1148 1145 1150 1151 1152 1153 1154 1155 1156 1157 1128	9 1942	23-Apr	32
148	21-Aug	1718 1957 1404 1259 1122 93 994 995 996 997 998 999 9000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1006 1007 1006 1001 1012 1013 1014 1015 1016 1017 1016 1019 1020 1021 1022 1023 1044 1605 177	1943	21-Apr	31
150	23-Au	386 1717 1556 1403 1258 1121 332 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 886 887 888 893 900 901 1026 1159 1300 1449 1606 177	1 1944	19-Apr	29
152	25-Au	888 1716 1855 1402 1257 1120 391 670 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 769 766 767 768 769 770 771 772 773 774 775 776 777 778 779 760 761 762 763 764 775 376 179 170	1945	17-Apr	27
154	27-Au	54. 1715 1954 MUT 1266 1119 390 653 756 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 654 655 656 667 668 657 658 650 67 167 87 162	3 1946	15-Apr	25
156	29.44		1947	13-4 nr	23
167	21.4		1041	11-4-4	
150	0.044		1040	9.444	19
	2-0ep		1040	3.4pi	10
	4-3ep		1350	r-opr	11
100	o-sep		5 1351	o-Apr	10
165	8-Sep	5/2 1/13 1548 1355 1250 1173 356 605 7 00 645 548 455 3/8 305 (240 105 784 455 166 K/ 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105 105	3 1352	3-Apr	13
167	10-Sep	577 1708 1547 1334 1243 1112 853 662 749 644 547 458 377 304 233 182 133 134 135 135 137 138 133 140 141 142 143 144 145 138 253 328 405 430 583 664 733 310 1035 1168 1303 1458 1615 175	1953	1-Apr	11
163	12-Sep	376 1707 1546 1333 1248 1111 382 861 746 643 546 457 376 303 238 181 132 91 32 33 34 35 36 37 36 39 100 101 146 139 260 329 406 431 544 665 734 311 1036 1163 1310 1459 1616 173	1 1954	30-Mar	10
171	14-Sep	375 1706 1545 1332 1247 1110 381 860 747 642 545 456 375 302 237 180 131 30 57 58 53 60 61 62 63 64 65 102 147 200 261 330 407 432 585 666 735 312 1037 1170 1311 1460 1617 178	2 1955	28-Mar	8
173	16-Sep	574 [705] [544 [139] [1246 [103] 880 [859] 746 [641] 544 [455] 374 [301] 236 [179] [130] 89 [56] 31 [32] 33 [34] 35 [36] 37 [66] 103 [146] 201] 262 [331] 408 [433] 586 [687] 736 [313] 1038 [177] [132] [1461] [168] [78]	3 1956	26-Mar	6
175	18-Sep	373 1704 1543 1330 1245 1108 373 858 745 640 543 454 373 300 235 178 129 88 55 30 13 14 15 16 17 38 67 104 149 202 263 332 409 454 587 668 737 914 1039 1172 131 1642 1613 176	1957	24-Mar	4
177	20-Sep	572 1703 1542 1338 1244 1107 378 857 744 639 542 453 372 239 234 177 128 67 54 29 12 3 4 5 18 39 68 105 150 203 264 333 410 495 558 669 798 315 1040 1173 1314 1463 1620 178	5 1958	22-Mar	2
179	22-Sep	871 1702 1541 1388 1243 1106 977 856 743 638 541 452 371 288 233 176 127 85 743 638 541 452 371 28 23 176 127 86 53 28 11 2 1 6 13 40 65 106 151 204 285 334 41 456 583 630 739 916 1041 1174 1315 1464 1621 178	5 1959	20-Mar	0
181	24-Sep	370 1701 1540 1387 1242 1105 376 855 742 637 540 451 370 287 232 175 126 85 52 27 10 9 6 7 20 10 1540 1387 1242 1105 376 85 742 637 540 651 800 317 1442 1175 1316 1465 1622 176	7 1960	19-Mar	360
183	26-Sep	565 1700 1533 136 1241 1104 375 854 741 636 533 450 369 296 231 174 125 84 51 26 25 24 23 22 21 42 71 108 153 206 267 336 413 498 591 592 801 91 1043 1176 1317 1466 1623 178	5 1961	17-Mar	358
185	28-Sep	566 (559) [538] [358] [356] [358] [356] [320] [103] 374 [853] [400] 535 [538] 448] [366] [295] [200] (173] [324] [83] [50] [43] 48 [47] 46 [45] [44] [45] [45] [45] [45] [45] [45]	9 1962	15-Mar	356
187	30-Sep	567 (658) (537) [354] [323] [102] 973 (552] 739 (534) (537) (448) (537) (254) (259) (72) (123) (82) (11 00) 79 (73) 76 (75) 74 (73) (10) (155) (26) (26) (33) (45) (150) (33) (45) (176) (131) (146) (162) (176) (131) (146) (162) (176) (146) (1963	13-Mar	354
189	2-Oct	566 657 1536 1383 1238 1101 972 851 738 633 536 447 566 233 228 171 122 121 120 119 116 117 116 115 114 113 112 111 1156 209 270 33 416 501 594 655 804 321 10.45 1179 1320 1469 1626 173	1 1964	11-Mar	352
191	4-Oct	585 (h596) [1535] [1322] [1327] [100] 971 [850] 737 [532] [535] 446 [355] [232 [237] [170] [h59] 168 167 166 157 166 157 164 163 162 161 160 159 158 157 [210] 271 [340] 417 [502] 595 [666 [605] 922 [1047] 1180 [1321 1470] 1627 [179]	2 1965	3-Mar	349
193	6-Oct	864 (1955) (1534) (1381) (1236) (1938) (170) (137	3 1966	7-Mar	347
195	8-Oct	863 (1634) (1533) (1580) (1235) (1086) (863) (846) (735) (530) (533) (444) (362) (259) (263	1967	5-Mar	345
197	10-Oc	582 (M33) (F32) (F	5 1968	3-Mar	343
199	12-Oc	861 [K92] [IS31 IS76 I231 IS76 I231 IS76 I23 IS96 957 846 733 628 531 442 441 440 439 436 437 436 435 434 433 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 432 431 430 431 430 432 431 430 431 430 431 430 431 431 430 431 4	5 1969	1-Mar	341
201	14-Oc	860 1691 1530 1377 1232 1095 866 845 732 627 530 529 528 527 526 525 524 523 522 521 520 519 516 517 516 515 514 513 512 511 510 509 508 507 600 701 810 827 1052 1158 1457 1632 175	7 1970	28-Feb	338
203	16-Oc	559 (569) (529) (376) (221) (1904) 565 (544 (73)) (26 (25 (24 (23 (22 (21 (20 (10)) (10)) (10)) (10)) (10)) (10)) (10)) (10)) (10) (10	1971	25-Feb	336
205	17-Oc	550 1659 1528 1375 1230 1093 364 643 730 729 728 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 726 727 746 715 714 713 72	1972	23-Feb	334
206	19-Oc	857 1668 1527 1574 1229 1092 963 842 841 840 839 838 837 836 837 836 837 836 837 836 833 832 831 830 829 827 826 827 826 823 822 821 820 819 818 817 816 817 816 813 930 1055 1188 1329 1476 1535 180	1973	21-Feb	332
208	21-Oc	856 1667 1526 1373 1228 1031 962 961 960 953 958 957 956 955 954 953 952 951 950 949 948 947 946 945 944 943 942 941 940 933 938 937 936 935 934 933 932 931 1056 1189 1330 1479 1636 100	1 1974	13-Feb	330
210	23-Oc	855 (665 (552) [152] [15	1975	17-Feb	328
212	25-Oc	84 1 1645 1 1524 1 1271 1 1226 1 1226 1 1226 1 1226 1 1220 1 1220 1 1210 1 1216	3 1976	15-Feb	325
214	27-Oc	859 (664 (552) (570) (166) 166	1977	13-Feb	323
216	29-Oc	822 (663) (522 (521) (520) (521) (521) (510) (515) (516) (516) (516) (516) (516) (516) (510) (500	5 1978	11-Feb	321
218	31-Oc	851 (M22) (561 1600 1673 1676 1677 1676 1677 1676 1675 1672 1671 1670 1652 1665 1665 1665 1665 1665 1665 1665	5 1979	3-Feb	319
220	2-Nov	50 1645 1848 1847 1846 1847 1846 1845 1842 1841 1840 1839 1836 1837 1836 1837 1836 1835 1832 1831 1830 1830 1832 1836 1837 1836 1835 1832 1831 1830 1830 1830	7 1980	7-Feb	317
222	4-Nov	111 111 111 111 111 2015 2015 2015 2015	2 1981	5-Feb	315
L			ę	ę	
224	6-Nov		÷	ė	
1			312	314	

EXHIBIT 12.1 - Square of Nine Chart

Trend	Rates as to Importance
45 day	2
90 day	1
120 day	6
135 day	4
180 day	3
225 day	8
270 day	5
315 day	7
144 day	9
216 day	10

8 5 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8 8
105 6.449 1
107 10-Aug 1057 1056 1055 1056 1055 1052 1051 1050 1045 1040 1047 1046 1045 1044 1043 1042 1041 1040 1039 1030 1037 1036 1035 1036 1035 1030 1020 1020 1020 1020 1020 1020 1020
123 12-Aug 1050 1602 1601 1600 1673 1678 1677 1676 1675 1674 1673 1672 1671 1670 1669 1660 1657 1666 1665 1664 1663 1662 1661 1660 1659 1656 1655 1655 1655 1655 1655 1655
141 H-Aveg 1059 1660 1515 1514 1510 1512 1511 1510 1503 1508 1508 1508 1506 1505 1504 1500 1502 1501 1500 169 1498 1495 1494 1495 1494 1495 1492 1491 1490 1497 1476 1475 1471 1476 1475 1471 1476
No 16-Aug 1060 (664 (516 (325 1055 1055 1055 1055 1055 1055 1055 10
144 18-Aug 1861 1685 1517 1552 1552 1552 1552 1550 1349 1349 1349 1344 1343 1342 1341 1340 1339 1338 1335 1336 1335 1336 1335 1330 1329 1328 1321 1330 1328 1327 1326 1325 1324 1320 1328 1321 1320 1319 1311 1316 1315 1314 1349 1349 1349 1349 1349 1349 1349
16 20-Aug 1852 1656 1518 1355 1553 1259 1259 1259 1259 1206 1207 1206 1207 1206 1207 1206 1202 1201 1200 1139 1136 1137 1166 1133 1132 1131 1130 1132 1131 1130 1132 1131 1130 1132 1131 1130 1132 1131 1130 1132
N6 22-Aug 1050 1657 1519 1525 1524 1210 1074_1023 1072 1072 1072 1070 1068 1056 1057 1056 1056 1056 1056 1055 1055 1055 1055
150 24-Aug 1564 1658 1520 1555 1211 1075 947_946 945 344 943 342 941 340 333 338 337 336 335 334 333 332 331 330 329 328 327 326 325 324 323 322 321 320 319 318 317 946 1420 1172 1312 1313 1469 1533 1469 1533
152 26-Aug 1055 1658 1521 1541 1556 122 1056 948 28 227 225 625 625 624 22 026 21 200 619 016 052 100 17 051 10 10 00 20 200 201 200 100 100 100 10
154 28-Aug 1056 1650 1552 1355 1257 1251 1057 243 023 717 716 715 714 713 712 711 710 709 709 707 706 705 704 703 702 701 700 639 638 637 636 635 634 633 632 637 659 634 1038 1170 1310 1310 1311 1467 463 1003 16-Apr 25
155 23-Aug 1057 1531 1552 1558 1536 1558 1541 1078 350 630 718 64 <u>613 612 611 610 603 608 607 606 605 604 603 602 601 600 553 558 555 554 553 552 554 553 552 551 550 555 554 553 552 551 550 555 554 553 552 551 550 555 552 554 553 552 551 550 555 552 554 553 552 551 550 555 552 554 553 552 554 554 554 554 554 554 554 554 554</u>
156 31-Aug 1066 1632 1524 1324 1325 1251 1329 1251 1329 1251 1329 1251 1329 1251 1329 1251 1329 1251 132 13 151 510 515 514 513 515 514 513 512 511 510 503 503 503 503 503 503 503 502 501 500 439 436 437 486 508 660 736 912 1036 106 1039 1426 1629 1601 12-Apr 21
160 2-5-0 1056 1635 1525 1555 1556 1556 1556 1556 1556 155
162 4-Sep 1870 1634 1526 1361 1261 1261 1261 1261 1261 1261 12
164 6-5-5p 1871 1655 1527 1329 1326 1258 1029 1326 1258 1029 54 834 834 834 832 84 834 722 618 522 434 854 822 261 280 273 272 672 77 276 277 276 277 276 277 276 277 276 275 276 273 279 277 276 275 276 277 277
66 e-Sep 1072 1666 1520 126 126 126 126 126 126 126 126 126 126
166 10-5cp 1873 1637 1523 1264 1220 11064 1526 1220 11064 1566 1220 11064 156 120 1106 156 152 154 1220 1106 156 155 154 152 151 120 155 155 154 152 151 120 1203 165 155 154 152 150 1203 1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 1100 110
163 12-5cp 1074 1636 1530 1370 1565 1221 1065 1571 637 637 725 621 525 437 357 255 621 525 437 357 255 221 165 117 116 115 114 113 112 111 110 103 108 107 106 150 202 262 330 406 430 562 662 730 306 1030 1162 1022 1033 1459 1623 1735 31-Mar 10
171 U4-Sep 1075 1639 1537 1546 1222 1066 958 638 726 622 526 448 558 628 726 622 526 448 558 628 222 166 118 75 77 76 75 74 73 72 71 70 65 105 149 201 261 528 405 449 51 661 789 305 102 1101 102 1459 142 1734 29-Mar 8
173 15-3cp 1076 1700 1752 1372 1367 1223 1067 1323 1057 1323 1057 1223 1067 1323 1057 1323 1057 135 105 1257 123 1057 132 17.113 73 27.445 45 44 45 42 41 40 66 104 148 200 260 328 404 488 [580 600 788 304 1028 1160 1300 101 1457 482] 1733 27.446 6
175 10-5cp 1077 1701 1533 1325 1326 1224 1060 560 640 728 624 528 440 560 240 728 624 528 440 560 280 224 166 120 60 48 24 23 22 21 20 19 39 67 103 147 199 259 327 403 447 157 679 787 303 1027 1159 1239 1300 1445 142 1732 25-447 4
177 20-3c-p 1078 1702 1754 1724 1549 1225 1069 961 841 729 625 529 441 061 269 1225 109 961 841 729 625 529 441 061 269 225 105 121 01 49 25 11 8 72 046 129 129 145 129 129 145 129 129 145 129 129 145 129 129 145 1
179 22-3-59 1079 1703 1705 1076 1270 1226 1030 942 442 730 668 530 442 362 200 268 170 122 8 20 26 170 122 82 61 70 122 82 61 70 122 82 61 70 122 82 61 70 122 82 61 70 122 82 61 70 122 82 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 120 81 70 10
181 23-5-50 1800 1704 1856 1376 1377 1227 1031 963 643 731 627 53 443 563 281 227 171 123 83 51 227 171 123 83 51 27 11 3 4 16 58 64 100 44 196 286 324 400 484 576 676 784 900 1024 1156 1236 1444 453 1617 (783 1263 20-Mar 360
183 25-5-6 1061 1705 1577 1372 1226 1032 94 84 732 626 532 44 364 732 626 532 444 364 282 228 172 124 84 52 28 172 124 84 52 28 172 13 14 15 35 63 94 31 95 285 323 399 433 575 675 675 670 699 1023 1155 1255 1443 1452 1616 1769 1769 1769 1769 1769 1769 1769
185 27-5-0 162 1706 1530 1579 123 1239 1539 1229 1539 1229 1539 1229 1539 1229 1539 1229 1539 1229 1539 1229 153 125 125 125 125 125 125 125 125 125 125
107 23-5cp 1053 1707 153 1274 1230 1034 566 466 734 630 534 465 62 42 230 174 126 1054 1765 1263 124 1250 1034 565 457 58 55 65 75 58 55 60 61 57 141 153 253 1241 153 1253 1241 1250 1153 1253 1241 1450 164 1450 164 1766 1566 14-Mar 354
189 1-Oct 184 1706 1840 [137 127 1231 [108 947] 647 251 631 55 447 755 631 55 447 367 285 231 [15 127 12 67 68 69 90 91 52 33 34 95 96 40 192 252 320 36 480 572 [572 70 66 102 1152 1232 1440 1449 1613 [176 126 12414]
151 3-Oct 1205 1709 1541 1391 1376 1232 1036 568 648 756 632 556 448 566 225 756 448 566 225 176 128 129 150 171 132 133 134 135 156 137 138 135 156 137 138 135 151 631 757 657 758 650 1019 1151 1291 433 446 1612 1784 1346 1612 1784 1346 110 4147 350
122 5-Oct 1866 1710 1542 1325 1327 1233 1037 968 048 737 633 537 448 569 237 123 177 176 179 180 181 182 183 184 185 186 187 180 189 1280 138 344 781 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 178 178
194 7-Oct 1867 1711 1945 1839 1378 1234 1089 570 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 850 708 280 237 238 233 240 241 242 243 244 245 246 247 248 244 317 353 477 858 658 777 859 1077 1149 1288 1437 1446 1610 1782 1952
156 5-0-ct 1688 1712 1544 1548 1775 1255 1059 571 851 739 635 539 451 737 129 005 01 302 203 304 305 306 307 308 305 310 311 312 313 314 315 316 352 476 568 666 776 632 1056 1140 1268 1436 1445 1409 1781 1361 4-Mar 345
198 11-Oct 1089 1715 1845 [1385 [1386 [1396 129] 1296 [100 972 852 740 655 [540 452 372 373 374 375 376 377 378 375 376 377 380 381 382 383 384 385 386 387 388 389 390 31 475 [547 677 778 a1 1015 1147 1287 1435 1444 1408 1780 1780 1940 2.44m 343
200 13-0: 1580 1714 1546 1286 1281 1237 1101 373 853 741 637 541 453 454 455 456 457 458 459 460 461 462 463 464 465 466 467 468 463 470 471 472 473 474 566 666 774 830 1014 1146 1286 1434 1443 1407 (177) 1553 25+7+0 341
202 15-00: 1091 1715 1547 1027 1028 1239 1102 124 1239 1102 124 1239 1102 124 1239 1102 124 1259 154 547 144 145 145 144 545 544 545 546 545 550 551 552 553 554 555 556 557 556 555 556 551 562 563 564 565 665 773 689 1031 1442 1406 1779 1958 27.7+0 339
204 16-0: 1032 1716 1546 1039 1039 1239 100 978 055 743 639 640 641 642 643 644 645 646 647 648 643 650 651 652 653 654 655 656 657 658 659 660 61 662 63 664 772 069 1012 1144 1264 1432 1441 1405 1777 1957 25-F-6 337
206 18-00: 18-30 1777 18-18 10-30 13-4 12-40 11:04 37.6 856 744 745 746 747 746 747 748 749 785 751 752 753 754 755 756 757 758 759 760 761 762 763 764 765 766 767 768 769 777 1 867 1011 14.0 12.03 14.31 14.40 14.04 1776 1956 2-3-F-6 35
208 20-0-1 1354 1718 1550 1335 1325 13241 1105 377 857 858 655 860 861 862 863 864 865 866 867 868 863 870 871 872 873 874 875 876 877 878 879 880 881 882 883 884 885 866 1001 112 1282 1430 1439 1403 177 155 21+7+5 33
210 22-0-1 1855 1715 1531 1366 1242 1106 376 973 950 961 982 983 984 985 986 987 988 989 980 990 991 992 993 994 995 996 997 998 939 1000 1001 1002 1003 1004 1005 1006 1007 1008 1009 111 1281 1281 128 1128 1128 1128 1128
212 24-0-1 1856 1720 1852 1236 1237 1245 1107 1108 1103 110 111 1112 1113 1114 1115 1116 1114 1115 1116 1119 1120 1121 1121 1121 1123 1124 1125 1126 1127 1128 1129 1120 1121 1123 1134 1135 1136 1137 1136 1139 1140 1280 1428 1437 1401 1120 1121 1131 114 115
24 26-0: 1057 1721 1755 1059 1058 1244 1245 1246 1247 1246 1247 1246 1247 1246 1247 1246 1247 1246 1247 1246 1252 1255 1255 1255 1255 1255 1255 125
215 28-0-0 1038 1722 1554 1354 1389 1390 1391 1352 1330 1391 1352 1330 1391 1352 1330 1391 1352 1330 1391 1352 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1350 1391 1
217 30-0-1 1559 1725 1555 1355 1356 1357 1358 1359 1030 1001 1002 103 104 105 106 1007 1068 10.09 100 101 112 113 104 105 104 105 104 102 102 102 102 102 102 102 102 102 102
219 14/6/ 1200 1724 1556 1557 1558 1555 1550 1561 1562 1553 1564 1565 1566 1561 1562 1563 1564 1565 1566 1567 1568 1569 1576 1576 1576 1576 1576 1576 1576 1576
221 3-4/6/ 1361 1725 1726 1727 1728 1729 1730 1731 1732 1733 1734 1735 1736 1737 1738 1738 1739 1740 1741 1742 1743 1744 1745 1746 1747 1748 1749 1750 1751 1751 1752 1751 1754 1755 1756 1751 1751 1752 1753 1754 1755 1756 1751 1751
223 5-4/6/ 1292 1903 1904 1905 1906 1907 1906 1909 1900 1910 1911 1912 1915 1914 1915 1916 1917 1916 1919 1920 1521 1322 1323 1924 1325 1326 1329 1301 1331 1332 1333 1341 1355 1356 1337 1338 1343 1345 1345 1345 1345 1345 1345 1345

EXHIBIT 12.2 - Square of Four Chart

MAJOR YEAR CHANGES OF TREND

The major yearly long term trends usually terminate on their anniversary dates. They are confirmed by the minor trend directions. For example after a major trend has topped, the minor trend may have a 45 day bottom to high and a 90 day bottom to high trend reversing the market down. See the following rules concerning vibrations of trend direction.

RULES OF VIBRATIONS OF TREND DIRECTION

When the trend ends at the high it is assumed the market will turn down. When the trend ends on the low it is assumed the market will turn up. Follow

															225															
								226							189							224								
							227	220	190						153						199	227	223							
						222	221	491	150	154					117					152	100	197	223	222						
					229	220	192	101	155	134	110				01				110	152	151	101	100	222	221					
				220	223	102	192	150	155	110	no	02			45			00	110	110	101	150	100	105	221	220				
			221	230	10/	133	457	100	120	113	02	02	46		40		44	00	29	115	11/1	150	1/0	100	104	220	219			
		232	201	195	104	159	101	121	120	84	05	47	40	10	5	8	44	43	15	79	114	112	мJ	1/1.9	104	193	213	219		
	223	202	196	155	159	150	122	K£ I	95	04	19	41	11	10		0	7	45	42	10	77	115	112	140	147	105	192	210	217	
	200	197	150	160	155	123	KC C	86	05	49	40	12					'	в	42	41		76	ΠZ	-1-1-1	141	146	102	191	211	
		101	161	100	124	120	87	00	50	40	13	12						Ŭ	5	41	40	.0	75		110	140	145	101		
			101	125	124	88	01	51	50	14	10								5	4	40	39	15	74	110	109	140			
				120	89	00	52	01	15	14										-	3	00	38	14	73	100				
						53		16	.0												Ū	2		37						
							17															-	1							
234	198	162	126	90	54	18																		36	72	108	144	180	216	252
							19																35							
						55		20														34		71						
					91		56		21												33		70		107					
				127		92		57		22										32		69		106		143				
			163		128		93		58		23								31		68		105		142		179			
		199		164		129		94		59		24						30		67		104		141		178		215		
	235		200		165		130		95		60		25				29		66		103		140		177		214		251	
		236		201		166		131		96		61		26		28		65		102		139		176		213		250		
			237		202		167		132		97		62		27		64		101		138		175		212		249			
				238		203		168		133		98			63			100		137		174		211		248				
					239		204		169		134				99				136		173		210		247					
						240		205		170					135					172		209		246						
							241		206						171						208		245							
								242							207							244								
															243															
LCIB	CLEC	IF 18	10.0	a	1	0.4	0																							

EXHIBIT 12.3 Circle of 18

the next 4 rules concerning this. Study the historical market of each commodity or stock to determine which particular trend from 45 - 315 day has turned its trend in the past.

1) When the vibrations of trend start moving from low to high the trend is turning down.

2) When the vibrations of trend start moving from high to lower high the trend is turning down.

3) When the vibrations of trend start moving from high to low the trend is turning up.

4) When the vibrations of trend start moving from low to higher low the trend is turning up.

Γ																	313	312																	
										314							263	262							311										
									315		264						213	212						261		310									
								316		265		214					163	162					211		260		309								
							317		266		215		164				113	112				161		210		259		308							
						318		267		216		165		114			63	62			111		160		209		258		307						
					319		268		217		166		115		64		13	12		61		110		159		208		257		306					
				320		269		218		167		116		65		14			11		60		109		158		207		256		305				
			321		270		219		168		117		66		15					10		59		108		157		206		255		304			
		322		271		220		169		118		67		16							9		58		107		156		205		254		303		
	323		272		221		170		119		68		17									8		57		106		155		204		253		302	
		273		222		171		120		69		18											7		56		105		154		203		252		301
			223		172		121		70		19													6		55		104		153		202		251	
				173		122		71		20															5		54		103		152		201		
					123		72		21																	4		53		102		151			
						73		22																			3		52		101				
							23																					2		51					
824	274	224	174	124	74	24																							1	50	100	150	200	250	300
825	275	225	175	125	75	25																							48	49	99	149	199	249	299
							26																					47		98					
						76		27																			46		97		148				
					126		77		28																	45		96		147		198			
				176		127		78		29															44		95		146		197		248		
			226		177		128		79		30													43		94		145		196		247		298	
		276		227		178		129		80		31											42		93		144		195		246		297		
	326		277		228		179		130		81		32									41		92		143		194		245		296			
		327		278		229		180		131		82		33							40		91		142		193		244		295				
			328		279		230		181		132		83		34					39		90		141		192		243		294					
				329		280		231		182		133		84		35			38		89		140		191		242		293						
					330		281		232		183		134		85		36	37		88		139		190		241		292							
						331		282		233		184		135			86	87			138		189		240		291								
							332		283		234		185				136	137				188		239		290									
								333		284		235					186	187					238		289										
									334		285						236	237						288											
										335							286	287																	
																	336	337																	
L B		NF 48																																	

EXHIBIT 12.4 Circle of 48

USING THE SQUARE OF 9 FOR FORECASTING

The square of 9 has become very popular for forecasting time and price. Many expensive Gann wheels have been sold in the last few years. The Gann square of 9 in the Excel template program is an electronic version of one of those expensive wheels. In fact it is much better, because it is precisely accurate. It's based on formulas. For ease of use you may want to create a simple plastic overlay which fits over your computer screen. The advantage of this overlay is that it can be rotated over the square of 9. This is something that the Excel spreadsheet program can't do yet. If you want to, of course, you can figure the points out on the screen without the overlay using the drawing lines in the program. Exhibit 12.8 is an example of the overlay to draw on your screen. Remember, it must be to the scale of your screen. The angles on the overlay

					151													150					
				152		127											126		149				
			153		128		103									102		125		148			
		154		129		104		79							78		101		124		147		
	155		130		105		80		55					54		77		100		123		146	
156		131		106		81		56		31			30		53		76		99		122		145
	132		107		82		57		32		7	6		29		52		75		98		121	
		108		83		58		33		8			5		28		51		74		97		
			84		59		34		9					4		27		50		73			
				60		35		10							з		26		49				
					36		11									2		25					
						12											1						
						13											24						
					37		14									23		48					
				61		38		15							22		47		72				
			85		62		39		16					21		46		71		96			
		109		86		63		40		17			20		45		70		95		120		
	133		110		87		64		41		18	19		44		69		94		119		144	
157		134		111		88		65		42			43		68		93		118		143		168
	158		135		112		89		66					67		92		117		142		167	
		159		136		113		90							91		116		141		166		
			160		137		114									115		140		165			
				161		138											139		164				
					162													163					
CIBC	LEO	F 12																					

EXHIBIT 12.5 Circle of 12

must be checked carefully with the degrees on the square of 9 for accuracy. We recommend a 17" flat computer screen with adjustable sizing controls so you can get the overlay to fit precisely. With these controls you can adjust the horizontal and vertical size of the screen so it is perfectly square.

The square of 9 is important, because it is based on the number nine. The number nine is the basis of our entire number system. The square of 9 is actually known as the Pythagorean Cube. It starts with a small number in the center and then it spirals outward in ever increasing numbers. The first square ends with the number 9, the second square ends with the number 25. All of these numbers can be exactly squared ($3 \times 3 = 9$, $5 \times 5 = 25$ and so on). The outside of the square of 9 has both the 360 degrees of the circle and calendar dates of the year on it. This is programmed into the Excel template. The dates



EXHIBIT 12.6 Hexigon chart

include the four quarters of the year starting with the Spring Equinox (March 21st) on the right. The Summer Solstice (June 21st) at the top. The Fall Equinox (September 23rd) at the left and the Winter Solstice (December 21st) at the bottom. These dates run counter clockwise.

The overlay that you can make to overlay on your computer screen can divide the square of 9 into 45 degree sections, 120 degree sections and 144 degree sections. Also on the overlay can be indicated important timing dates such as Fibonacci numbers of 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34 55 and so on and lunar 30 day cycles. Also weekly numbers of 5 can be placed around the circle of 5, 10, 15, etc. Also good to put on the overlay is the important death zone of Gann which is the 42 to 55 calendar days.



EXHIBIT 12.7 Hexigon Chart

HERE IS HOW TO USE THE OVERLAY

When the market makes an important low or high on a particular date, you should place the overlay on top of the square of 9 on your computer screen. Rotate the overlay so that the 0 point is on that date. Now look on the overlay over 45 days to get the important date of a possible change of trend. The 45 degree line is actually minor resistance. The next 45 degree line over is the next resistance which is 2 x 45 or 90 degrees. This represents major resistance. The market almost always goes through to the 90 degree point in time. The 0 line on the overlay should be placed on the price of the market low. 45 and 90 degrees over in price represent resistance in price. When the time arrives for the possible change in trend, watch were the price is. If it's at one of the angle lines, it's probably major resistance and a major change of trend will usually occur. Sometimes when the market is very strong in one direction it can continue its trend through to the next resistance levels in both time and price. It will go to the 120, 144, 216, 270, 315 and 360 levels in both time and price. Watch all the points carefully for changes in trend. Also watch the Cardinal Square and Fixed Cross points for resistance in price. Also watch the area of square numbers at the end of each circle for resistance points. Using the square of 9 is an art rather than a science.

THE SQUARE OF 4

This chart works exactly as the square of 9. It works in some markets where the square of 9 doesn't. You can find resistance numbers on both the fixed cross and the cardinal square the same way as the square of 9. To determine if you should use this square over the square of 9, count the contract days of the entire contract.

THE HEXAGON CHART

In Exhibit 12.6 the hexagon chart is very important as it shows how angles affect the markets at both low and high levels to different degrees and why markets move faster at high levels than low levels. In the chart:

The second circle ends at 7

The third circle ends at 19 - which is 12 over the second

The fourth circle ends at 37 - which is 18 over the third.

The fifth circle ends at 61 - which is 24 over the fourth.

The six circle (not shown) ends at 91 - which is 30 over the fifth circle.

The seventh circle (not shown) ends at 127 - which is 36 over the sixth.

The eight circle (not shown) ends at 169 - which is 42 over the last circle

The ninth circle (not shown) ends at 217 which is 48 over the last circle.

The tenth is completed at 271 which is a gain of 54 over the last circle.

The eleventh is completed at 331 which is 60 over the last circle

The twelfth is completed at 397 which completes the hexagon which is a gain of 66 over the last circle.

THE OCTAGON CHART

The octagon chart is also very important to show how the markets move from one level to another.

In this chart the second circle ends at 25 The third circle ends at 49 - which is 24 over the second The fourth circle ends at 81 - which is 32 over the third The fifth circle ends at 121 - which is 40 over the third and so on.

THE CIRCLE CHARTS OF 12, 18 AND 48

These charts were composed with the Excel spread sheet program. The charts begin with 1 and run around the circle in a counter clockwise motion. The 12 chart expands outward with the multiplier number of 24 and the 18 chart expands outward with the multiplier number of 36, the 48 chart expands outwardly with a multiplier of 50. Gann used these charts by circling recurring prices or dates on the same diagonal level. Go back on the chart that you are following and circle the important highs and lows of the market on the circle charts. Notice how they seem to land on the same diagonal. The Excel spread sheet template can also be changed to dates using these circle charts. If set up in such a manner the important dates of highs and lows will also land on the same diagonals.



EXHIBIT 12.8 Overlay for the Square of 9

CHAPTER 13

FORECASTING TIME

"Time is the most important factor"

O ne trader once told me that you can not trade a market unless you know where it is going. W.D. Gann was able to forecast time cycles with amazing accuracy. This chapter tells you how he did most of it. W.D. Gann believed that the future is but a repetition of the past. There are no new things under the sun. By studying the past one can forecast future cycles of the market.

THE 120 YEAR MAJOR CYCLE

This is a very important cycle which is 6 times the 20 year cycle, 4 times the 30 year cycle and 2 times the important 60 year cycle.

THE 100 YEAR MAJOR CYCLE

This is one of the largest cycles which you need to watch closely for comparison to the current time period. Watch for price trends that are similar in their direction with current direction.

THE 90 YEAR MAJOR CYCLE

This is a very important cycle which is 3 times the 30 year cycle and $1 \frac{1}{2}$ times the important 60 year cycle.

THE 80 YEAR CYCLE

This is an important cycle which repeats over and over again in the trading history of the markets.

THE 60 YEAR MASTER CYCLE

This the master cycle that repeats over and over again. You should go back and find past 60 year cycles and compare them to the current cycle. To be very accurate in forecasting time you must know this cycle.

THE 49 - 50 YEAR CYCLE

You should also find the 49 - 50 year cycles in the market. This is a very

important cycle. There are seven 7 year cycles in the 49 - 50 year cycle. Watch each 7 year cycle, many times they act the same as prior cycles. For example, the last 7 year cycle in the 49 year cycle is usually down. This knowledge is very important to have.

THE 40 YEAR CYCLE

The 40 year cycle is most important as it is 1/2 of the 80 year cycle. Watch to see how it closely.

THE 30 YEAR CYCLE

Watch the 30 year cycle which is 1/2 of the 60 year master cycle. Each of these 30 year cycles inside of the big 60 year cycles is important.

THE 20 YEAR CYCLE

This cycle is important as their are 3 of these in each 60 year cycle. Watch for similar action to determine the trend of this cycle.

THE 15 YEAR CYCLE

This cycle is also important as it is 1/2 of the 30 year cycle. Watch it closely in conjuction with the 30 year cycle.

THE 10 YEAR CYCLE

This is a very important cycle as their are 6 of these in the 60 year cycle, 5 of these in the 50 year cycle, 3 of these in the 30 year cycle and 2 of these in the 20 year cycle.

THE 8 YEAR CYCLE

This is a very important cycle that often shows up which is 1 year above the 7 year cycle.

THE 7 YEAR CYCLE

This cycle is also important to watch as their are 7 of these in the 49 year cycle and 14 of these in the 98 year cycle.

THE 5 YEAR CYCLE

This is a very important cycle to watch as it is part of every other cycle above. This is the smallest cycle that we look at for comparison purposes.

THE 2 /12 - 3 1/2 YEAR CYCLE

This cycle is most important as most counter trends react against the main trend with one of these small cycles.

HARMOMICS OF THESE CYCLES

All of these cycles have harmonic years. To get these harmonics just divide the cycle into 10. For example the important 60 year cycle divided by 10 is 6. Therefore every 6 years there will be a harmonic of of the major cycle. The 90 and 60 year cycles are the major ones and are very important. It is impossible in most cases to get data going back 60 - 90 years. You have to scan the NY Times for even sometimes cash data to interpolate. The harmonic years give you an idea of what the major cycle is even if you don't have the data. For the 60 year cycle if you go back for example every 6 years for 20-30 years you will have a good idea of what the major 60 year cycle was. This is especially true if every 6 years back the market did exactly the same thing.

THE 1 YEAR AND UNDER CYCLE

The cycles under one year are all based on the circle. The cycles inside of the year are the 45, 90, 120, 135, 144, 216, 240, 244, and 270. The 45 day cycle can be broken down even further into 22 1/2, 11 1/4 day cycles. The 120 day cycle can be broken down into 60, 30, 15 and 7 1/2 day cycles. The 144 day cycle can be broken down into 72, 36, 18, and 9 day cycles. It is important to understand that all cycles must fit within each other. The smallest cycle of 11 1/4 is a part of even the 100 year cycle. The cycles in this paragraph make up all the important cycles in the world. Everything is based on these cycles. If you find an important cycle that is not one of these, then it must be a Fibonnaci ratio of one of these cycles.



EXHIBIT 13.1 Elliott wave structure of the market

HOW TO USE THE CYCLES

The most important thing you can do is to watch how the cycles are working. Compare the current cycles with those of the past. Go back to each of the cycle years and compare them to the current ones. You should print out all past harmonic cycle years on translucent paper and overlay them on top of each other. When most of the harmonic cycles are in the same direction then the probability of that direction in the market today is pretty sure. Sometimes when only half of all the cycles are in one direction, you must wait for all cycles to turn in that same direction. All of the major cycles can be divided by 10 or 5 to get harmonics of the big cycles. Watch those 10 and 5 divisions of prior cycles to determine how the market might move in each future division. Many times each division will have the same exact movement as prior divisions. Watch the major 90 and 60 year cycles as these represent the dominate cycles of the market. If both of these change in one direction.

USING DAILY CHARTS FOR FORECASTING

Daily price movements give the first change of trend in the markets. Watch for the 10 week time period. Also watch for the 7 1/2, 11 1/4, 15, 22.5, 30,





45,60, 72, 90, 100 day cycles. This works the same as using the major cycles. For example if 10 weeks ago the market started to move up then watch the current time period. If it starts to move up exactly 10 weeks from its last low then it is important.

SHIFTS IN CYCLES

There are sometimes shifts in the major cycles several days from anniversary high or low days. This is caused by progression of time. That means that time has gotten out of sink or has shifted several days. You can find that shift and make allowences for it by looking at the pattern of today and comparing it the pattern of a past cycle. You should use transparent chart paper and overlay them on top of each other and slide the paper to the right or left to allow for that shift of time. There are many cases the anniversary dates of past harmonic cycle years hit the exact date! In Exhibit 13.2 we show a comparison of December Cotton 1982 to December Cotton of 1992. We have shifted the 1982 contract to the left to allow for the change in progression of time. See how the swings of the market are almost identical.

BEGINNINGS OF TIME PERIODS (CHANGING OF TRENDS)

Watch the first and third week of the beginnings of these important times of the year. Usually a range of days will set up with a high and a low. When prices break out one way or another the other side of the range becomes resistance or support. In order of importance these are the periods to watch for:

January 21 - Watch the first 5 days March 21- Watch the first 5 days June 21- Watch the first 5 days September 21- Watch the first 5 days

Yearly - Watch the first and third week of January Semi-Annual - Watch the first and third week of July Quarterly - Watch the first and third of week of April and October.

You should also divide the year into divisions and watch the first 5 days of each division for a change of trend.

Divide the year into 2 to get 6 months Divide the year into 4 to get 3 months Divide the year into 3 to get 4 months Divide the year into 8 to get 1/2 months Divide the year into 16 to get 22 1/2 days Divide the year into 32 to get 11 1/4 days

COMPARISONS OF YEARS ENDING WITH SAME DIGIT

Go back over the years and overlay all years that end in the same digit. For example for the current year of 1995, you should compare 1985, 1975, 1965, 1955 etc. This can be done easily with a program such as SuperCharts or Trade Station. The program is windows based and allows windows of the different years to be overlaid vertically on top of each other. In Exhibit 13.3 December Wheat tends to have highs in years ending with 9 and lows with years ending in 7.

REOCCURRING CYCLES

The market normally makes the same amount of moves from it's peaks and troughs. You should go back and look at all past cycles carefully. Watch the following combinations to determine the probable cycle length. Write all prior counts down and keep tract of them for future reference. List all of the following in the market:

High to Low Low to High Top to Top Bottom to Bottom



EXHIBIT 13.3 Comparison of years with same digit

Those moves can be in both calendar days and market days. To calculate the differences you can use the Excel spread sheet for the calendar days and the master plastic overlays for market days. The two projections will create a time windows for you to trade on.

RATIOS

It is also a good idea to use ratios between the following:

High to Low Low to High Top to Top Bottom to Bottom

The following Fibonacci ratios work very nicely. These are the ratios that we have programmed into the Excel spreadsheet See Exhibit 13.4. This is a picture of the Excel spread sheet module for wave forecasting based on those ratios. By inputting three dates in this spread sheet you can get the top to top or bottom to bottom time calculations. By inputing 2 dates in the spreadsheet you can get bottom to top and top to bottom calculations of timing points. See exhibit 13.4 and 13.5.

.382 .500 .618 1.00 1.382 1.500 1.618 2.000 2.382 2.500 2.618

WAVE STRUCTURE

To be able to understand major cycles of the market, it is necessary to use wave structure of the market. Exhibit 13.1 is basic Elliott wave pattern which must be understood to do proper cycle analysis. All wave patterns are based on this diagram. The distance between wave bottoms and tops are based on Gann numbers and Fibonacci ratios of these numbers. You must understand there are different degrees of wave patterns. A lot has to do with what picture you are looking at. Are you looking at a daily (short term) chart, a weekly (intermediate term) chart or a monthly (long term) chart. Each of these time frames is working in its own wave structure. All wave structures must mesh with each other from the smallest all the way up to the monthly. It is best to do a wave analysis of the three important time frames of the market. These time frames are as follows:

- 1) Major use a 15 30 year monthly chart.
- 2) Intermediate use a 5 10 year weekly chart
- 3) Minor use a 5 year daily chart.

TIMING BASED ON RATIOS OF WAVE STUCTURE

Future timing points are based on ratios of prior tops and bottoms in the market. The Excel spread sheet is set up to calculate many of these ratios which will save you a lot of time. These ratios of couse will be based on calendar days, not on market days. You will find that you might get away with just using the Excel spread sheet for these calculations because we have found that in many cases they both come up with close to the same dates. Now lets go into some of the time ratios caluclations with some examples.

DAT	ES						Diff	1st I	Date Pro	jections	3												
No	1st date	No	2nd da	ate N	2rd c	late	Diff	4	5.00	90.00	120.0	00	135.00	144.0	0 18	0.00	216.00)	225.00	240).00	270	.00
1	10/8/91	1	10/22/9	91 1	12/11	/91	64.000	0 11	22/91	16/92	2/5/9	92 2	820492	2/29/9	2 4/	i /92	5/11/92	2 1	5/20/92	6/4	/92	7148	92
2	8/19/82	2	8/20/8	2 2	10/4/	82	46.000	10 10	13/82	11/17/82	12/17/	82	1/1/83	1710/8:	3 241	5/83	3/23/8	3	4/1 /83	4/16	83	5/16/	183
3	10/12/82	3	10/12/8	2 3	11/1/	32	20.000)0 111/.	26/82	1/10/83	2/9/8	33 2	224/83	3/5/83	3 4/1	0/83	5/16/83	3 !	5/25/83	6/9	183	7/9/	83
4	5/18/82	4	5/18/8	2 4	6/17/	82	30.000	10 7/	2/82	8/16/82	9/15/	32 9	#30/82	10/9/8	2 11/1	4/82	12/20/8	2 1	12/29/82	1/13	183	2/12	183
5	5/6/92	5	5/6/92	2 5	5/19	34	725.00	00 6%	20/92	8/4/92	9/3/9	92 9	9/18/92	9/27/9	2 11/	2/92	12/8/92	2 .	12/17/92	1/1	93	1/31/	93
6	5/19/92	6	5/19/9;	2 6	5/19	34	712.00	DO 78	3/92	8/17/92	9/16/	92	10/1/92	10/10/9	12 11/1	5/92	12/21/9	2 1	12/30/92	1/14	/93	2/13/	/93
7	5/1/94	7	5/1/94	. 7	9/1/9	34	123.00	DO 67	15/94	7/30/94	8/29/	94 9	3/13/94	9/22/9	4 10/2	28/94	12/3/94	4 ·	12/12/94	12/2	7/94	1/26	/95
8	5/1/94	8	5/1/94	. 8	6/1/9	34	31.000	0 67	15/94	7/30/94	8/29/	94 9	3 /13/94	9/22/9	4 10/2	28/94	12/3/94	4 ·	12/12/94	12/2	7/94	1/26	/95
2nd D	ate Proiec	tions									-	3rd Dat	e Proiectio	ons									_
45.00	0.00		120.00	135.0) 144.0	00 1	180.00	216.00	225.00	240.00	270.00	45.00	90.00	120.00	135.00	144.0	0 180.	00	216.00	225.00	240.00) 27	70.00
12/6/9	31 1/20/9	2 2	2/19/92	3/5/9:	2 3/14/	32 4	4/19/92	5/25/92	6/3/92	6/18/92	7/18/92	1/25/92	3/10/92	4/9/92	4/24/9	2 5/3/9	2 6/8/	92	7/14/92	7/23/92	8/7/92	9	6/92
10/4/8	2 11/18/8	2 1	2/18/82	1/2/83	3 191198	33 2	2/16/83	3/24/83	4/2/83	4/17/83	5/17/83	11/18/82	11/2/83	2/1/83	2/16/83	2/25/8	3 4/2/	83	5/8/83	5/17/83	83 6/1/83		6/92
11/26/8	32 1/10/8	3	2/9/83	2/24/8	3 34548	33 4	4/10/83	5/16/83	5/25/83	6/9/83	7/9/83	12/16/82	2 1/30/83	3/1/83	3/16/83	3/25/8	3 4/30	183	6/5/83	6/14/83	6/29/8	3 712	29/83
71218	2 8/16/8	2 9	9/15/82	9/30/8	2 10/9/	32 1	11/14/82	12/20/82	12/29/82	1/13/83	2/12/83	8/1/82	9/15/82	10/15/82	2 10/30/8	2 11/8/8	2 12/14	182	1/19/83	1/28/83	2/12/83	31	14/83
6/20/9	32 8/4/92	2	9/3/92	9/18/9	2 94274	92 .	11/2/92	12/8/92	12/17/92	1/1/93	1/31/93	6/15/94	7/30/94	8/29/94	9/13/9/	9/22/9	4 10/28	¥94	12/3/94	12/12/94	12/27/9	4 ¶2	26/95
7/3/9:	2 8/17/9	2 9	9/16/92	10/1/9	2 10/10/	92 1	11/15/92	12/21/92	12/30/92	1/14/93	2/13/93	6/15/94	7/30/94	8/29/94	9/13/9/	9/22/9	4 10/28	¥94	12/3/94	12/12/94	12/27/9	4 1¥2	26/95
6/15/9	4 7/30/9	4 8	3/29/94	9/13/9	4 9/22/	94 10	0/28/94	12/3/94	12/12/94	12/27/94	1/26/95	10/16/94	11/30/94	12/30/9	4 1/14/95	1/23/9	5 2/28	/95	4/5/95	4/14/95	4/29/95	5 5%	29/95
6/15/9	14 7/30/9	4 8	3/29/94	9/13/9	4 9/22/	94 10	0/28/94	12/3/94	12/12/94	12/27/94	1/26/95	7/16/94	8/30/94	9/29/94	10/14/9	4 10/23/	94 11/28	¥94	1/3/95	1/12/95	1/27/95	5 212	26/95
Fib Pr	ojections																						
0.382	0 Diff	0.50	000 D	iff	0.6180	Diff	1.000	0 Diff	1.3820	Diff	1.5000	Diff	1.6180	Diff	2.0000	Diff	2.3820	Diff	2.50	00 Di	ff 2.6	5180	Diff
144/92	2 24	1/12	y 92 3	2	1/19/92	40	2/13/9	2 64	3/8/92	88	3/16/92	96	3/23/92	104	4/17/ 92	128	5/11/92	152	5/19/	92 16	0 572	6/92	173
10/21/8	12 18	10/2	7/82 2	3	11/1/82	28	1/26/9	2 340	1 12/6/82	64	12/12/82	69	12/17/82	74	14/83	92	1/21/83	110	1/27/	83 11	5 2'	183	120
11/8/82	2 8	11/1	182 1	0	11/13/82	12	12/31/	31 334	7 11/28/82	28	12/1/82	30	12/3/82	32	12/11/82	40	12/18/82	48	12/21	182 5	9 12%	23/82	27
6/28/8	2 11	7/2	182 1	5	7/5/82	19	1/10/9	2 349	4 7/28/82	41	8/1/82	45	8/4/82	49	8/16/82	60	8/27/82	71	8/31/	82 7	5 9%	882	64
2/1/95	5 277	4/28	3/95 3	53	7/23/95	448	12/5/9	3 -147	/ 1/26/97	1002	4/22/97	1088	7/17/97	1173	4/20/98	1450	1/21/99	1727	7 4/178	99 18	13 7/1	2/99	2578
1/27/9!	5 272	4/22	2495 3	56	7/15/95	440	11/22/9	33 -160) 1/8/97	984	4/3/97	1068	6/26/97	1152	3/25/98	1424	12/2 1/ 98	1696	5 3/16/	99 17	30 6/	899	2531
10/17/9	4 47	11/1	/94 E	2	11/16/94	76	4/12/9	2 -872	2 2/17/95	170	3/4/95	185	3/19/95	199	5/5/95	246	6/20/95	293	7/5/	95 30)8 7/2	0/95	400
7/10/9	4 39	6/16	94 1	6	6/20/94	19	1/1/19	2 -872	2 7/13/94	43	7/17/94	47	7/21/94	50	8/2/94	62	8/13/94	74	8/17/	94 7	8 8/2	194	67

EXHIBIT 13.4 Date and Fibonacci projections

HIGHS TO LOWS

In the Elliott wave model take all highs to lows and plug them into the program. For the Elliott wave model from Exhibit 13.1 use the following waves:

Wave 1 - 2(c) Wave 3(5) - 4(c) Wave 5 to C

LOWS TO HIGHS

In the Elliott wave model take all lows to highs and plug them into the program. For the Elliott wave model from Exhibit 13.1 use the following waves:

Wave 0 - 1 Wave 2(c) - 3(5) Wave 4(c) - 5 Wave 0 - 5

ΤΟΡ ΤΟ ΤΟΡ

In the Elliott wave model take all high to highs and plug them into the program. For the Elliott wave model from Exhibit 13.1 use the following waves:



Wave 1 - 3(5) Wave 3(5) - 5 Wave 1 - 5

BOTTOM TO BOTTOM

In the Elliott wave model take all lows to lows and plug them into the program. For the Elliott wave model from Exhibit 13.1 use the following waves:

Wave 0 - 2(c) Wave 2(c) - 4(c) Wave 4(c) - C Wave 0 - C

USING MINOR TO MAJOR CYCLES

All of these calculations are based on the minor degree of daily chart data. These will give you only minor calculations of important pivot points. You should also calculate the same ratios based on intermediate (weekly data) and major (monthly data). These are much more important and signal major changes of trend from major pivot points. All three degrees - minor, intermediate and major must work together. That means if you are expecting a major top based on the monthly charts, then the intermediate (weekly charts) and the minor (daily charts) should all concide without conflict.

SAME WAVE PATTERN

The program will calculate future timing points based on Fibonacci ratios from these tops and bottom. When three or more dates come together it should be an important pivot timing point. In comparing past major time cycles with current time cycles it is necessary to understand that if you are comparing a major time cycle pattern that happened 30 years ago with one today, it is very important that both patterns have the same wave pattern.

PROGRAMMED RATIOS

From the number of days between the 1st, 2nd and 3rd or the 2nd and 3rd, the time sheet calculates ratios forward from the 3rd date. The ratios programmed in are as follows: (See Exhibit 13.4)

- 1) .382 2) .500 3) .618 4) 1.00
- 5) 1.318

6) 1.500
7) 1.618
8) 2.000
9) 2.382
10) 2.50

From these ratios the time sheet projects forward the time in days between the 1st, 2nd and 3rd or the 2nd and 3rd dates forward in those Fibonacci ratios. Every wave is a ratio of a prior wave. When you get several dates that are exactly the same projected forward by both the Gann and Fibonacci numbers, you have a significant timing point in the future. When you get 3 projection dates close to each other, it is significant. The market will usually change direction when it hits these significant cluster of dates. The ratios in the Excel time sheet are variable, so that you can change them to fit the market. Some markets work better with some ratios than others.

NUMBER OF DAYS

The Fibonacci ratios have the difference in days beside the date, so you can determine if the number of days is significant. This gives you the measure of the wave in time. If the numbers are close to the Gann circle numbers (45, 90, 120 etc.) they are significant and you should put more importance on them. You will also notice that the distance between the 1st, 2nd and 3rd dates are totalled in a column in days.

INTRADAY TIMING POINTS

This time sheet can also be adjusted to project intraday timing points down to the very minute. It has been tested with 1 minute tick charts and many times it will project the intraday turns of the market within 5 minutes! The Fibonacci ratios of the swings projected forward are very important again when they are a Gann circle number. For example 45, 90, 120 hours etc.

USING BEGINNING NUMBERS FOR FORECASTING

When a major bottom is formed the market will start up and go up the amount of the beginning number of its bottom. When it makes a major top the market will go down the amount beginning number of it's top. For example, it Wheat made a bottom at 43, it will move up as follows:

43 minutes 43 hours 43 days 43 months 43 years When a major bottom is made it causes ripples in the market almost like throwing a rock in a pond. The bottom causes waves in the market. When the Wheat market makes a top at 395 that too creates market ripples that last through time. The market will move down:

395 minutes395 hours395 days395 weeks395 months395 years

The time sheet can be used to forecast time from beginning numbers. Those beginning numbers can be put into the time sheet. Daily numbers should be used for the minor time frame. When using the intermediate and major time frame - that is weekly and monthly charts, you should use the bigger numbers. Those weekly and monthly numbers must be converted into daily numbers to be used in the Excel time sheet, as it will only work with daily numbers. For example, 395 weeks equals (395 x 7) or 2765 days. Remember when using the intermediate and major cycles that all trends end with the minor cycle. For example a cycle might end in 395 weeks and 395 days.

For example, if wheat just formed at major bottom at 43, you could set the time sheet to project out 43 days, 43 weeks, or 43 months. Remember it is necessary to convert the weekly and monthly numbers to daily as the time sheet won't understand weeks, or months.

USING CIRCLE NUMBERS FROM BEGINNING NUMBERS

The important circle number can also be used to forecast from important tops and bottoms. These can be put into the time sheet also. Remember the more clusters of timing point out in the future the more important is the projected pivot point. Using the circle numbers of:

- 45 72 90 120 144 216 240 270
- 360

HARMONICS OF BEGINNING NUMBERS

The time sheet can also be set to forecast harmonics of the beginning number. For a low of 43 days set the numbers to 43, 86, 129. 172 and so on. This would give you a turning point at every interval of 43.

SQUARE OF 9 AND 4 FOR TIME PROJECTION

We have also programmed into the Excel template the square of 9 and the square of 4 charts. These charts are an electronic marvel! They are 10 times better than any other Gann wheel, because you can change the center number to a beginning number or date for time and price projection. For time that number should be set a beginning date of a contract or of a minor, intermediate or major bottom. See Exhibit 13.6.

USING THE CENTER WITH BEGINNING NUMBERS

The square of 4 should be used with a contact with an even number of days and the square of 9 should be used with a contract with an odd number of days. Experiment of with both squares to see which one is hitting the numbers better. For time set the center number to the beginning date of the contract. You will find resistance to advance at the end of each circle and at the Cardinal and Fixed Cross points.

USING THE SQUARES WITH 1 AT THE CENTER

The squares can also be used effectively in their natural state with 1 at the center. This gives you the natural numbers from which to find time resistance points. If you locate the prior market tops and bottoms in the square you will

12/7794	12/8/94	12/3/34	12/10/94	12/11/94	12/12/94	12/13/94	12/14/94	12/15/94	12/16/94	12/17/94	12/18/94	12/13/34	12/20/94	12/21/94	12/22/94	12/23/94	12/24/94	12/25/34
12/6/94	10/2794	10/3/94	10/4/94	10/5/94	10/6/94	10/7/94	10/8/94	10/3/94	10/10/94	10/11/94	10/12/94	10/13/94	10/14/94	10/15/94	10/16/94	10/17/94	19/18/34	12/26/94
12/5/34	10/1/94	85794	8/6/94	8/7/94	8/8/94	8/9/94	8/10/94	8/1994	8/12/94	8/13/94	8/14/94	8/15/94	8/16/94	8/17/94	8/18/94	8/15/34	10/13/94	12/27/94
12/4/94	3/30/94	8/4/94	6/16794	6/17/94	6/18/94	6/13/94	6/20/94	6/21/94	6/22/94	6/23/94	6/24/94	6/25/94	6/26/94	6/27/94	6128/34	8/20/94	10/20/94	12/28/94
12/3/94	3/23/94	8/3/94	6/15/94	5/5/94	5/6/94	5/7/94	5/8/94	5/5/94	5/10/94	5/1994	5/12/94	5/13/94	5/14/94	5415294	6/23/94	8/21/94	10/21/94	12/23/34
12/2/94	3/28/94	8/2/94	6/14/94	5/4/94	4834	4/2/94	4/3/94	4/4/94	4/5/34	4/6/94	4/7/34	4/8/94	49334	5/16/94	6/30/94	8/22/94	10/22/94	12/30/94
12/1/94	3/27/94	8/1/94	6/13/94	5/3/94	3/31/94	3694	3/7/94	3/8/94	3/3/34	3/10/94	3/11/94	3412/94	4/10/94	5/17/94	7/1/94	8/23/94	10/23/94	12/31/94
11/30/94	3/26/94	7/31/94	6/12/94	5/2/94	3/30/94	3/5/94	246794	2/17/94	248/94	2/19/94	2/20/94	3/13/94	4/11/94	5/18/94	7/2/94	8/24/94	10/24/94	4495
11/23/94	3/25/34	7/30/94	6/1934	5/1/94	3/23/94	3/4/94	2/15/94	2/6794	2/7/94	218/34	2/21/94	3/14/94	4/12/94	5/13/34	7/3/94	8/25/94	10/25/94	1/2/95
11/28/94	3/24/94	7/23/94	6/10/94	4/30/94	3/28/94	3/3/94	2/14/94	2/5/94	2005	2/3/94	2/22/94	3/15/94	4/13/94	5/20/94	7/4/94	8/26/94	10/26/94	1/3/95
11/27/94	3/23/34	7/28/94	6/3/34	4/23/94	3/27/94	3/2/94	243/94	212/34	2/1934	2/10794	2/23/94	3/16/94	4/14/94	5/21/94	7/5/34	8/27/94	10/27/94	14/95
11/26/94	3/22/94	7/27/94	6/8/94	4/28/94	3/26/94	3/1/94	2128/94	2/27/94	2/26/94	2/25/94	2/24794	3/17/94	4/15/94	5/22/94	7/6/94	8/28/94	10/28/94	1/5/95
11/25/94	3/21/94	7/26/94	6/7/94	4/27/94	3/25/94	3124134	3/23/94	3/22/94	3/21/94	3/20/94	3/15/94	31894	4/16/94	5/23/94	7/7/94	8/23/94	10/23/94	¥6/95
11/24/94	3/20/94	7/25/94	6/6/34	4/26/94	4/25/34	4/24/94	4/23/94	4/22/94	4/21/94	4/20/94	4/13/94	4/18/94	417794	5/24/94	7/8/94	8/30/94	10/30/94	177/95
11/23/94	3/13/94	7/24/94	6/5/94	674/34	6/3/94	6/2/94	6/1/94	5/31/94	5/30/94	5/23/94	5/28/94	5/27/94	5/26/94	5/25/94	7/3/34	8/31/94	10/31/94	¥8/95
11/22/94	3/18/94	7/23/94	7122134	7/21/94	7/20/94	7/13/94	7/18/94	7/17/94	7/16/94	7/15/94	7/14/94	7/13/94	7/12/94	7/11/94	7710794	3/1/34	17794	19/95
192994	3/17/94	3415434	3/15/94	3/14/94	3/13/94	3/12/94	3/17/94	3/10/94	3/3/34	3/8/94	3/7/94	3/6/94	3/5/34	3/4/34	3/3/94	3234	11/2/34	1/10/95
11/20/94	1813¥34	11/18/94	11/17/94	11/16/94	11/15/94	11/14/94	11/13/94	11/12/94	111194	11/10/94	193/34	198/94	177/94	196/94	11/5/94	184/94	11/3/94	¥1¥95
450/35	1/23/95	1/28/95	1/27/95	1/26/95	125/95	1/24/95	123/95	1/22/95	12195	1/20/95	1/13/95	1/18/95	117/95	1/16/95	1/15/95	1/14/95	1/13/95	11235

EXHIBIT 13.6 Square of 9 for dates

find that many of them are on natural Cardinal or Fixed Cross points. These are dates around the outside of the square. If you find the dates hit the same time as the price in the square this is a very significant. This means that the contract is locked in with natural time and resistance points. You will have to use the plastic overlay to match the date on the outside with the inner square numbers. See the overlay example in Exhibit 12.8. You will have to draw this on a plastic overlay sheet in the scale of your computer screen or print the square out on paper and use it over that.

The overlay divides the square of 9 or 4 up into proportions. Place the 0 point of the overlay on the date a market starts to move. Then watch for a turn in the market over 45, 90, 120, 144, 180, 216, 240, or 270 degrees using the plastic overlay. When you move the overlay to the projected date check to see if the price of the commodity it intersecting the line going through the center to the other side. It is important if the price of the commodity is at an some important angle to the date that it is on. For example, 90, 180, or 120 degrees over. This is called price aspecting. When the market starts to run up in price and intersects at numbers on the 45, 90, 120 degree lines then there will probable be a change of trend. In the opposite fashion if the price starts to decline into the 45, 90, 120 degree points and aspects with key prices then the market will then again have a change of trend.

TABLE CHART SHEETS FOR TIME PROJECTION

The Excel sheet has also been programmed to have all of the important Gann table charts.

1) Table of 3	2) Table of 6
3) Table of 9	4) Table of 12
5) Table of 19	6) Table of 20
7) Table of 24	8) Table of 27
9) Table of 36	10) Table of 52
11) Table of 90	

These table charts can be used effectivelt to indicate resistance in time for markets. You must find what table the market is working to use them effectively. For example, Gann used the Table of 20 chart for the New York Stock Exchange. He called it his NY Stock Exchange Permanent Chart. These table charts can be used for both time and price forecasting. For time you would set the beginning 1 number to an important beginning date of a minor, intermediate or major low. It could also be set to the first trading day of a contract. Draw 45 degree angles off of the beginning of the bottom and top of the table and carry them through the table. Intersections of these angles as well as the top and bottom of the table charts are support and resistance to time. Therefore using the NYSE Permenent Table Chart major resistance is found every 20 calendar days from an important bottom. See Exhibit 13.7.

These table charts can be adjusted so that a prior market high date is on top. By trial and error keep changing the 1 position to a date that makes a high date on the top of the table.

USING THE MASTER OVERLAYS TO FORECAST TIME

The plastic overlays should be used to forecast important time points in the future as to market days. The master overlays can save significant time in projecting time based on market days. They are as effective with market days as the Excel spreadsheet is with calendar days.

You should make up all the imporant overlays to match your computer screen or the paper charts that you are following. The need to be adjusted to the proper scale of both price and time. If you use a computer screen, this can be done using a good program like SuperCharts which can lock the scale in. You will also need to have a horizontal and vertical adjustment on your computer screen to make sure the chart is square.

You will find that tops and bottom are formed based on the circle numbers and the circle numbers are where the overlays come from. Tops and bottoms occur every 45, 72, 90, 120, 144, 216, 240, 270 and 360 days from other tops and bottoms.

Another imporant feature the master overlays have is that markets will work in certain squares and will change directions when they cross from one square to the next. The market will usually work out 9 squares in one major direction. This takes a lot of trial and error to find the right square the market is working in. Using this method it is usually necessary to use either MAX:CHART or GannTrader to print out the charts for testing overlays.

120194	2/3/94	2/28/94	3/20/94	4/8/94	4/28/94	5/17/94	6/6/94	6/25/94	7715/94	8/3/94	8/23/94	3/11/94	10/¥94	10/26/94	11/3/94	1928/94	12/18/94	16/95	125035
113/34	278494	2/27/94	3/13/34	4/7/94	4/27/94	5/16/94	6/5/34	6/24/34	7714/94	8/2/94	8/22/94	3/10/34	3/30/94	10/13/34	198/94	1927/94	12/17/94	19735	125/95
1/18/94	2/7/94	2/20494	3/18/94	4/6/94	4/26/94	5/15/94	6/4/94	6/23/94	7713/94	8/1/94	8/21/94	3/3/34	3/23/94	10/18/94	177/94	1926/94	12415234	14/95	124/95
1/17/94	2/6/94	2/25/94	3/17/84	4/5/94	4/25/94	5/14/94	6/3/94	6/22/94	7712/94	7/3//94	8/20/94	3/8/94	3/28/94	10/17/94	196/94	1425734	12/15/94	13/95	123/95
1/16/94	2/5/94	2/24/94	3/16/94	472794	4/24/94	5/13/94	6/2/94	6/2¥94	7/19/34	7/30/94	8/13/94	3/7/94	3/27/94	10/16/94	195734	1924/34	12/14/94	12/95	122/95
1/15/94	2/4/94	2/23/94	3/15/94	4/3/94	4723494	5/12/94	6/1/94	6/20/94	7710/94	7/29/94	8/18/94	3/6/94	3/26/94	19/15/34	194/94	1923/94	12/13/94	8895	¥2¥95
1/14/94	2/3/94	2/22/94	3/14/94	4/2/94	4/22/94	571784	5/31/94	6/13/94	7/9/94	7/28/94	8/17/94	3/5/94	8/25/34	10/14/94	193/94	1922/94	12/12/94	12/31/94	120/95
1/13/94	2/2/94	2/21/94	3/13/94	4/1/94	4/21/94	5/10/94	5/30484	6/18/94	7/8/94	7/27/94	8/16/94	814734	3/24/94	10/13/94	11/2/94	192934	12/11/94	12/30/94	¥13/95
1712/94	2/¥94	2/20/94	3/12/94	3/3894	4/20/94	5/3/34	5/23/34	6/17/84	717794	7/26/94	8115234	3/3/94	3/23/94	10/12/94	19934	1920/94	12/10/94	12/23/34	¥18/95
¥1¥94	13134	2/19/94	3/1994	3/30/94	4/19/94	5/8/94	5/28/94	6/16/94	716/94	7125134	8/14/94	3/2/94	3/22/94	10/11/94	10/31/94	11/13/94	12/3/94	12/28/94	1/17/95
1/10/94	¥30/94	2/18/94	3/10/94	3/23/34	4/18/94	5/7/94	5/27/94	6/15/94	75734	772#94	8/13/94	3/1/34	3/21/94	10/10/94	10/30/94	1918/94	12/8/94	12/27/94	¥16/95
1/3/34	¥23/94	2/17/94	3/9/94	3/28/94	4/17/94	5/6/34	5/26/94	5/13/34	7/4/94	7/23/94	872944	8/31/94	3/20/94	10/3/34	10/23/94	1917/94	12/7/94	12/26/94	115/95
16/94	¥28/94	2/16/94	3/8/94	3/27/94	4/16/34	5/5/94	\$125/34	6/13/94	7/3/94	7/22/94	8/1994	8/30/84	3/13/94	10/8/94	10/28/94	1916/94	12/6/94	12/25/34	¥14/95
17794	¥27/94	2/15/94	3/7/94	3/26/94	4/15/94	84234	5/24/94	6/12/94	7/2/94	7/21/94	8/10/94	8/29/94	378/84	10/7/94	10/27/94	1915/94	12/5/94	12/24/94	¥13/95
¥6/94	¥26/94	2/14/94	3/6/94	3/25/94	4715/34	5/3/94	5/23/94	6/1894	7/¥94	7/20/94	8/9/94	8/28/94	3/17/94	10/0/84	10/26/94	11/14/94	12/4/94	12/23/94	¥12/95
1/5/94	¥25/94	2/13/94	3/5/94	2125134	4/13/94	5/2/94	5/22/94	6/10/94	6/30/94	7/13/94	8/8/94	8/27/94	3/16/94	10/5/94	10/25/94	11/13/94	12/3/94	12/22/94	¥1¥95
14/94	¥24/94	2/12/94	ər4734	3/23/94	4/12/94	5/¥94	5/21/94	6/3/34	6/23/34	7/16/94	8/7/94	8/26/94	3/15/34	10/4/94	10/24/94	1712/84	12/2/94	12/21/94	¥10/95
1/3/94	¥23/94	21194	3/3/94	3/22/94	4/19/94	4/30/94	5/20/94	6/8/94	6/28/94	7/17/94	8/6/94	8/25/94	3/14/94	10/3/94	10/23/94	11/11/94	127784	12/20/94	19/95
1/2/94	122/34	2/10/94	3/2/94	3/2//94	4/10/94	4/23/94	5/13/34	6/7/94	6/27/94	7/16/94	8/5/94	8/24/94	9/13/94	10/2/94	10/22/94	11/10/94	1930/94	12713484	¥8/95
7751	¥2¥94	2/9/94	3/¥94	3/20/94	4/3/94	4/28/94	5/18/94	6/6/94	6/26/94	7/15/94	8/4/94	8/23/94	3/12/94	10/1/94	10/28/94	199/94	1923/94	12/18/94	17795
MYSE DEDMA	MENT CHART																		

EXHIBIT 13.7 Table Chart for time analysis

CHAPTER 14

FORECASTING PRICE

To be successful in trading you must know where price is going.

Price forecasting is one of the most difficult Gann techniques. In this chap ter we will go into the techniques that are available. Many of the techniques are different, but in the end they come out to the same price projection. These techniques should be used in combination with the time forecasting techniques. Time must in the end square out with price. In many respects time and price are one and the same thing. Using our Excel template you will find that you can change the format of the squares in a sheet from numbers to time and the same sheet can be used for time forecasting. This includes every sheet in the Excel template that we have programmed for you.

TABLE CHARTS

One of the easiest ways of forecasting price is to the table chart. We have all the basic number formats programmed into the Excel template. These table charts work with the internal time structure of the market. This is the vibration rate of the market. This vibration rate is usually based upon the all time low or high of the contract. It may also be based on the beginning or opening price of the contract or stock. It's a matter of trial and error to find the right vibration rate. In many cases the vibration number is based on a key circle number. You can set the number 1 on the table chart to a major high or low

Prices						Diff	1st Price F	2nd Price Projections																
No) 1st price	e No	2nd price	No	3rd price	Diff	45	90	120	135	144	180	216	225	240	270	45	90	120	135	144	180	216	225
1	465.000	1	469.000	1	478.000	13.00	510.000	555.000	585.000	600.000	609.000	645.000	681.000	690.000	705.000	735.000	514.000	559.000	589.000	604.000	613.000	649.000	685.000	694.000
2	######	\$ 2	######	2	######	46.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####
3	****	\$ 3	######	3	#####	20.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####
4	****	\$ 4	######	4	#######################################	30.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	###
5	****	ŧ 5	######	5	#####	725.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####	#####	######	######	######	######	######	######		######	######	#####
6	######	ŧ 6	######	6	#####	712.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	####	####	######	######	######	######	######	######	##	######	######	#####
7	######	ŧ 7	######	7	######	123.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####	#####	######	######	######	######	######	######	#####	######	######	#####
8	######	\$	######	8	######	31.00	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######	######

EXHIBIT 14.1 Price projecting

and watch the top and bottom numbers on the square. These numbers are quite often the highs and lows of the swings of the market when the table is set correctly. Table charts are programmed so you change the 1 number and every number in the entire table chart changes. Each square has it's own formula except for square 1. Square 2 is based on the formula of square 1 plus 1. Square 3 has a formula of square 2 plus 1 and so on. In the table charts, never change any number but the base number of 1 otherwise, you will ruin the entire table chart. Always keep a backup of your Excel spread sheet so if one of the other squares gets changed by accident, you can replace the entire template with your backup. See Exhibits 11.1, 11.2, 11.3, 11.4, 11.5, 11.6, 11.7, 11.8, 11.9, 11.10 and 11.11.

Besides changing the number 1 position of the table chart to a bottom of a contract it can be left at 1. The resulting top, bottom and midpoints of the table chart are natural resistance points. For example using the table chart of 20 which is Gann's NYSE Permanent Table Chart every 20 points up is a natural resistance and support point of price. This is the number vibration the NYSE moves in.

CIRCLE CHARTS

The circle charts programmed into the Excel template have an amazing ability to forecast price. They work in the same way the square table charts do, except that instead of price going up and down, price spirals around a circle. The charts work in the same way as table charts do. You can change the beginning number 1 to a contract low, high or starting price to get important resistance and support prices. In the circle charts you will find the support and resistance numbers all on the same line going out from the center. Remember you can also leave the center at 1 for natural resistance and support prices going out from the center. See Exhibits 12.3, 12.4 and 12.5.

· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·																					
Fib Price	Fib Price Projections																				
0.3820	Diff	0.5000	Diff	0.6180	Diff	1.0000	Diff	1.3820	Diff	1.5000	Diff	1.6180	Diff	2.0000	Diff	2.3820	Diff	2.5000	Diff	2.6180	Diff
482.966	5	484.500	7	486.034	8	491.000	13	495.966	18	497.500	20	499.034	21	504.000	26	508.966	31	510.500	33	512.034	-2
######	18	######	23	######	28	524.000	-29704	######	64	######	69	######	74	######	92	######	110	######	115	######	120
######	8	######	10	######	12	498.000	-29758	######	28	######	30	######	32	######	40	######	48	######	50	######	27
######	11	######	15	######	19	508.000	-29611	######	41	#####	45	#####	49	######	60	######	71	######	75	######	64
######	277	######	363	######	448	1283.000	-33252	######	1002	#####	1088	######	1173	######	1450	######	1727	######	1813	######	2578
######	272	######	356	######	440	1190.000	-33265	######	984	######	1068	######	1152	######	1424	######	1696	######	1780	######	2531
######	47	######	62	######	76	601.000	-33977	######	170	######	185	######	199	######	246	######	293	######	308	######	400
######	39	######	16	######	19	509.000	-33977	######	43	######	47	######	50	######	62	######	74	######	78	######	67
EXH	IBIT	14.2	Fib p	orice 1	oroje	cting															

HEXAGON CHART

The hexagon spiral is based on the same principals of the square of nine. The charts start with the number 1 at the center and spirals around. The hexagon chart has six points extending outward. You can change the number 1 to a low or beginning price of the contract and all numbers will change accordingly around the chart. Gann used these charts to show how the further out you get in spirals the wider the price fluctuations will be. See Exhibit 12.6.

OCTAGON CHART

The Octagon spiral is also based on the same principal of the square of nine. The chart starts with the number 1 at the center and spirals around the higher numbers. The chart has 8 points extending outward instead of the 6 points of the hexagon chart. Support and resistance points can be seen at different levels out on the spiral. In this chart you can also change the number 1 to a low or beginning price of the contract and all numbers will change accordingly around the chart. See Exhibit 12.7.

TRITABLE 1 & 2 CHARTS

The tritable charts 1 and 2 are another form of table chart which can be used to forecast price resistance and support levels. The tritable 1 chart has the number 1 at the bottom - this is the odd chart. The triable chart 2 has the numbers 1 and 2 at the bottom this is the even chart. Again when you change the number 1 in either of these charts to a low or beginning price all the numbers in the chart will change accordingly. Resistance and support levels will show up on both sides of the triangles going up and also at the top and midpoints of the triangle. See Exhibits 12.12 and 12.13.

SQUARE OF 9

The square of nine has become a very popular chart. It can be used in many different ways to forecast price. See Exhibit 12.1.

BEGINNING PRICE OR CONTRACT LOW

The first way this chart can be used is the set the center number 1 at either the beginning price of the contract or a the contact low. Use the square of 9 on contracts that have an odd number of total contract days. Use the square of 4 for contracts that have an even number of contract days. So if wheat had a low at 43, you would change the number 1 to 43. Every time the square of 9 completes a circle there is resistance at that level. Price meets the square of its own starting price at the end of each circle. When the price exceeds that resistance, it then becomes support. The further the price gets out on the square the wider is the distance between the different resistance and support levels and the wider range of the fluctuations.

NATURAL NUMBERS

The second way to use this chart is to leave the center number as 1 and use the numbers at the end of each circle as natural resistance numbers. The other numbers of importance are the numbers at the Fixed Cross (those are the numbers that are vertical and horizontal from the center) and the Cardinal Square (those are the numbers that are X from the center). When price hits the natural resistance numbers there is opposition to advance.

GANN WHEEL

The third way to use this chart is to use the 360 degrees and dates around the outside and a plastic overlay (see Exhibit 12.8) divided into the angles of 90, 120, 144, 180, 214, 240 and 270 degrees. When the price of a contract or stock makes a low, you move the plastic overlay 0 point to that price and line it up with the price found inside the wheel. Now continue counter clockwise using the overlay till you get to the 90 degree line. The 90 degree line intersects with the next level of price inside the square. This is resistance. If price gets through this resistance it will go to the next level. The prior resistance then becomes support. Watch for a change of trend at every angle line. Sometimes price will be at an adjacent angle or an opposition angle. Watch the rallies and declines into these angles.

If rallies stop exactly on 90 degree lines and go back down, the main trend is down. If declines stop exactly on 90 degree lines and go back up the main trend is up. The secret is the wheel tells you that all counter trends against the main trend will end up on a key angle line. Resumptions of the main trend do not usually end on an exact angle line. They usually go through it. However, when you do notice that the main thrust of a trend does land on a key angle line, then the trend is reversing.

If you keep the 0 point of the overlay on March 21 and look at the prices the angles of the plastic overlay hit, you will find that sometimes the dates on the outside of the wheel hits the same price that an angle is on at the same time. This is called time aspecting price. This is natural time and price resistance. You always check this particular use of the wheel, as it happens too many times to be coincidence. These are very strong points of support and resistance.

SQUARE OF 4

The square of 4 can be used exactly as the square of 9. In all aspects it is identical except that it is an even square instead of an odd square. It should be used for contracts that have an even number of days in the contract. It has all the same functions as the square of 9. It can work with the beginning contract price or with the lows in the contract. It is a mystery why square of 4 is not as popular as the square of 9. Perhaps it was because it was too expensive to

print it on plastic as was done with the square of 9 in the making of the expensive Gann wheels that cost as much as \$900 in the past few years. Now with the Excel electronic spreadsheet you can use both of these squares.

MULTIPLE PRICE PROJECTIONS

While the square of 9 and 4 are excellent for giving resistance at the ends of natural circles which represent squares of the center, it is difficult to use these square with very many past lows and highs. One disadvantage also of the square of 9 and 4 is that they are designed for expanding waves and not for contracting waves. Contracting waves are when prices are coming down. Both the square of 9 and 4 are like a shell starting small at the center and getting bigger as prices get higher. To overcome these problems a sheet was designed to give multiple price projections and to allow for both expanding and contracting waves. This sheet also allows for Fibonacci price projections with counts of actual days. This is one of the most valuable sheets in the Excel template. Here is how the sheet works.

It allows for three prices to be placed in the spreadsheet on each row: 1st price, 2nd price and 3rd price. There are 8 rows down so it gives you a potential of 24 points to use for forecasting forward. It is very easy to add rows to this spreadsheet using the copy and paste routine, so you could actually add as many points as you wished. In each of these slots, you place past highs and lows of historical data. We have found it an excellent tool to place all the highs and lows of Elliott wave in this spreadsheet. Try to keep the same degree. For example make up one 8 row for the major degree which is a monthly chart going back 15-30 years. Make up another 8 rows for the intermediate degree which is weekly chart going back for 5 - 10 years. Then you should make up another 8 rows for the minor degree which is a daily chart going back 3 - 5 years. In this module also allows for variable lengths in projections. We have it programmed for the wheel numbers of 45, 90, 120, 144, 180, 216,

	WAVE PRO	JECTING DO	√N							AVERAGE C)F Points
	Å	В	C	DIFF	0.382	0.618	1	1.382	1.618	No.	Åvg
	486.6	483.1	484.4	4.8	481.2664	480.1336	478.3	476.4664	475.3336	480.13	480.13
· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	Å	В	C	DIFF	0.382	0.618		1.382	1.618		
/	484.4	483.6	484.4	1.6	482.9888	482.6112	482	481.3888	481.0112	481.3	480.715
	Å	В		DIFF	0.382	0.618		1.382	1.618		
A	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	483.2	481.5433333
\wedge											
	WAVE PROJECTING UP									AVERAGE C)F POINTS
	Å	В	C	DIFF	0.382	0.618	1	1.382	1.618	No.	Ávg
	483.1	484.4	483.9	1.8	485.0876	485.5124	486.2	486.8876	487.3124	480.13	480.13
	Å	В	C	DIFF	0.382	0.618	1	1.382	1.618		
/ V _B	0	486.7	485.8	487.6	672.9632	788.0368	974.3	1160.5632	1275.6368	481.3	480.715
	A	В	C	DIFF	0.382	0.618	1	1.382	1.618		
o′	0	487.25	486.65	487.85	673.6087	788.7413	975.1	1161.4587	1276.5913	483.2	481.5433333



240 and 270. These can be changed to other counts. Excel will only do daily price projections, so for weekly and monthly, you will have to change these settings to multiples of the daily counts. For weekly projections you might put in much larger counts for example put in the following 45 x 5 = 225 days, 90 x 5 = 450 days, 120 x 5 = 600 and so on. For monthly counts you would put in 45 x 30 = 1350 days, 90 x 30 = 1800 days, 120 x 30 = 3600 days and so on.

The counts forward give you important probably future cycle points. The bigger the degree, the more important the cycle is. The biggest advantage of this module is that you can match up several futures dates that are within 3 days of each other. The more match ups you get the more important the cycle is. When you get a major, intermediate and a minor degree to match up to the exact date, you have a very important cycle.

This module can also be used to forecast forward price and time of a bottom or top. You set the 1st price to a major bottom, for example 225 in March 95 Corn. Now set the module to forecast forward the following: 225 hours, 225 days, 225 weeks, 225 months. Therefore you would set it to the following days: 225/24 = 9.375, $225 \ge 125$, $225 \ge 5 = 1125$, $225 \ge 30 = 6750$ days. When the points in time are reached check the price and if it is a multiple, harmonic or Fibonacci ratio of the bottom price, then it is a significant point. If the difference from that price and the bottom is a Gann circle number, then it is significant.

FIBONACCI PRICE FORECASTING

This module also has an important function of forecasting Fibonacci price points. This is how it works. If you want to forecast out the Fibonacci ratio in price of an A, B, C wave you would put in A as the 1st price, B as the 2nd price and C as the 3rd price. From the 3rd price the module will forecast forward a predetermine ratio of the C and (B - A). The Fibonacci ratios are



EXHIBIT 14.4 ABC wave projecting

.382, .500. .618, 1.000, 1.382, 1.5000, 1.618, 2.000, 2.382, 2.50 and 2.618. The module will also give you the difference in price between (B - A) and C. If it is a perfect circle number for example 45, 90. 120, 144 etc., then it price has more validity. If you make the 1st price equal to the 2nd price then you would be getting ratios between only the 2nd and 3rd prices. You would also be getting yhe difference in price between them. The more cluster of prices that match up in the 3 price projections the more it is a confirmation of an important future pivot point. These Fibonacci ratio numbers are variable, so you can change them to specialized numbers. See Exhibit 14.1 and 14.2.

PATTERN

One of the secrets of price forecasting is pattern formation. Knowing where you are in the pattern formation. The secret is that virtually all markets continually form the same price patterns If you know where you are in this pattern formation then you know everything you need to know to make big money in the markets. What you are really doing in this situation is making a predetermined model of the market. At certain points in this pattern, you can check to see if in fact your are where you think you are. The formulas in the Excel template can tell you where you are most of the time. Now we are going to give you the exact pattern all market trade. It is in fact the Elliott wave pattern. The difference is that we have the formulas that tell you were you are in the wave at all times. Here are the formulas used with Exhibit 14.6

c = (a - b) + c





d = c - (c - b)m = (1 - 0) + 1d = c - (c - 0) x .6181 = i - (i - d) x .382f = e - (e-d) x .236h = g - (g - h) x .146g = f + (e - d) x 1.618 $g = d + (a - 0) \times 2.618$ i = d + (c - d) x 4.236h = g - (g - f) x .1459m = 1 + 1 x (a - 0)m = 1 + .618 x (a - 0)m = 1 + 1.618 x (a - 0)m = 1 + 1.618 x (i - o) extended l = k - (i - j + k - j x .618) $p = o - (m - n + o - n \times .618)$



EXHIBIT 14.6 Elliott price pattern

These formulas give you the probable price of almost every wave on the chart before the price gets there. If when the price gets to what looks like a 5 and the estimated price is not there, then there is a good chance that there is something wrong with your wave count. (See Exhibit 14.6)

The square of 9 and 4 chart can also help you get an idea of the end of every wave. By placing the beginning number of the wave at the 1 position in the center of the square you will find that most waves will end at the end of each circle in these squares. Sometimes the wave also might end at the one of the Fixed Cross and Cardinal Square numbers. (See Exhibit 12.1 and 12.2)

ABC FIBONACCI PRICE PROJECTING

If you want to know how strong the market is and where a wave is going and where to take profits use the ABC ratio method. We have set up such a module in the Excel spread sheet for this purpose. (See Exhibit 14.3) Every wave is a function of its two prior waves. 0 to A and A-B x ratio + B = Projection. Ratios = .382, 6.18, 1.000, 1.382. The prior 2 waves tells you where the current wave is going. The strength or weakness of the market can be determined from how strong each wave is. You can average several ABC waves together and tell where the average of the ABC's project.

A1 TO A2 RETRACEMENTS

The market will retract .382, 5.00 or .618 of the prior move. We have set up a module in the Excel spreadsheet to calculate that and average it out. See Exhibit 14.4. Initially you put in the bottom of the up move at A1 then you put in the price of the upmove at A2. Every time the market moves up to a new high you put in a new value for A2. One every bottom of a new wave you put that in another A2. The module will calculate the retracements for each A1 to A2. You can put them in and average the retracements to a common figure.

PROJECTING FROM SEVERAL SINGLE POINTS

One of the best methods of forecasting is to forecast time from a set of single points such as highs and lows. The Excel spread sheet can be used for this also. See Exhibit 14.5.

TIMING FROM DOUBLE OR TRIPLE POINTS

The Excel Spread sheet can also be used to check timing from double or triple points. Simply by putting in prices in the 1st, 2nd and 3rd price slots, it will project ratios from between the 1st + 2nd and the 3rd. It you only want ratios between the 2nd and 3rd make the 1st and 2nd prices the same. The ratios in the spread sheet are .382, .500, .618, 1.000, 1.382, 1.500, 1.618., 2.000. 2.382, 2.618. The ratios are variable so you could also change these to 1.00, 2.00, 3.00 etc. This would project equal time distances from those points.
USING THE MASTER OVERLAYS

The master overlays should be used to forecast price based on market days. You should create the following overlays on clear plastic in the scale of your charts. 45, 52, 72, 90, 120, 144, 216, 240, 270, and 360. They should be used in two different ways. One is to place them on highs and low. This is using it the variable way. From every top or bottom the market will move 45, 52, 72, 90, 120, 144, 216, 240, 270 and 360 points. You can take multiples of the squares also for price projecting. For example the market may move three squares of 144 from a price point. So if for example May Soybeans bottomed at 460 you would place the overlay left bottom on that point and project up 3 squares of 144. (460 + 144 + 144 + 144 = 892)

The squares can also be used the fixed way in that on every major bottom you could place the square at 0 point and project upward for price projections. For example with the previous example of Soybeans at 460 the fixed price resistance points would be at (144, 288, 432, 576, 720, 864, 1008 et c.) remember the more price clusters you have at one point the more important the price point is. You should also check back on all prior tops and bottoms for other indications of support and resistance.

The market will usually work in one of the natural squares of 45, 52, 90, 120, 144, 216, 240, 270 and 360. You must experiment to see which square it is working it. On daily charts in most cases it will be either the square of 90 or 144. In some cases it will work in the square of 120 or 52. You will also find that some of the square work better with the weekly and monthly charts better than the daily charts. It is just a big process of experimentation and trial and error until you find the right square or combination thereof.

Also the market will also work in the square which is usually based on the all time low of the market. For example in May Soybeans the market works in the square of 67 which is the all time low of that contract. You must make up a master plastic square of 67 for use with that contract. Use this in combination with the fixed square that you use.

Remember the more price clusters you have at one point the more important that point is. Use all the techniques presented in this course to arrive at those clusters. Use both market and calendar days. You will be suprised at the results.

EXCEL SPREAD SHEET

A necessity for time and price analysis

The Excel Spreadsheet is an excellent piece of software, necessary for the forecasting of both time and price using Gann analysis. This chapter explains how to use the program and the template that we have included in this course. Exhibit 15.1 is the picture of the Excel spread sheet that you get on your screen.

INSTALLING THE PROGRAM

It is necessary that you have at least a 486 IBM compatible computer with at least 4 MB of RAM and at least a 200 MB hard disk drive to use this program. You also need Microsoft Windows 3.0 or higher. It is suggested that the video card you use should be accelerated for windows programs with a resolution of at least 1024 x 768. It is also suggested that you use a 17" flat screen computer monitor with horizontal and vertical controls.

To install the program just insert the number 1 program disk into your disk drive. From the windows run menu access drive a and run setup. Follow the instructions and it will lead you through the setup of 5 installation disks.

When installation is complete you are now ready to install the Gann template into the program. Insert the Gann template disk in drive a. Pull up the Excel file menu. On it you will see 1 A:\GANN.XLS. Click this with the mouse and it will load the template into the Excel spreadsheet. Exhibit 15.1 will appear on your screen.

The Excel spread sheet is multi-tasking capable. That means you can run your windows chart program such as SuperCharts and the Excel spread sheet at the same time. To switch between the two programs you just press CTRL and ESC at the same time. This takes you to a task list. From this you will see Excel and SuperCharts. You can switch between the programs with the click of the mouse. This allows you to use both programs at the same time which is desirable for Multi-tasking runs quicker if you have at least 8 MB of RAM in your computer.

The spread sheet is graphically intensive. That is what makes it such a nice program for Gann time and price analysis. At the bottom of the screen,

you can see OCT, HEX, NYSE PERM, TBL3, TBL 6, TBL 9, TBL12, TBL19, TBL20, TBL24, TBL27. These are the sheets that are programmed into the template. You can scroll back and forth as there are even more sheets programmed than you can't see. In addition to those in view, there are the TBL36, TBL 52, TBL 43, TBL 67, TBL 90, PRICE PROJ, TIME PROJ, OVERLAYS, SQ9, SQ4, FIB PROJ, CIR18, CIR24, CIR12, TRI-1 AND TRI-2 charts. You can instantly bring up any of the charts with a click of the mouse.

TABLE CHART BASE CELL NUMBER 1

All of the table charts have a base of 1 which can be changed to any number. All other cells in the spread sheet have a formula in their squares which changes automatically when you change the number 1 cell. The number 1 cell can be changed to the contract beginning price or a low contact price. All the other cells then increase by a factor of 1.

PROJECTION CHARTS WHITE SQUARES

The three projection charts which includes the PRICE PROJ, TIME PROJ AND FIB PROJ have programmed cells which should not be disturbed. The colored cells are programmed and the white cells are the only ones you can input numbers into.



EXHIBIT 15.1 Program display

% SWING CHARTS

Swings charts tell you the direction of the market.

O ne of Gann's favorite tools was his swing charts. The rules for trading his swing charts are very simple. You can use swing charts to give you the trend of the market in the different degrees such as daily, weekly and monthly.

Gann's trend line indicator was a 1 day swing chart. In a rising market he keep moving his trend line up until the low of the prior day was broken. When that point was broken, he moved his trend line down until the high of the prior day was broken. The principal of his 3 day swing chart is the same. Keep moving the trend line up on a rising market until the low of the last 3 days is broken. When that low is broken move the trend line down until the high of the high of the last three days is broken.

Gann used the 3 day swing chart to tell the main trend of the market and the 1 day swing chart for the short term. The two can be combined to make a good trading system, in that when the 3 day swing chart goes long use the 1 day swing chart to enter the market.

Swing charts can be based on any amount of days, weeks, months, quarters or even years. Many traders experiment and try to find the best swing chart that best fits a particular market. It is difficult to beat the combination of the 1 day and 3 day swing chart. The same combination works well on weekly, monthly and quarterly charts. For example, use a combination 1 week and a 3 week swing chart. One of Gann's favorite swing charts for the main trend was based on quarterly prices.

Swing charts can also be based on price instead of time. When the low of the prior day is broken by say 2 cents in corn the trend line turns down. The trend line stays down until the market reverses up over the prior days high by 2 cents.

To increase the effectiveness of swing charts you can also use both time and price in the formula. By that, I mean that if on a 3 day swing chart the price declines below the prior day's low it must also decline a certain amount of cents also to confirm the down turn. For example in Corn the price must break the prior 3 day's low and also break the low by 2 cents to confirm the change of trend. If doesn't break both the time and price point, then the trend line indicator remains up.

Swing charts are effective for seeing a change of price trend both on the short term and the main trend. The swing chart is a good place for you to know where to place stops. Stops can be placed below or above the last important swing points.

Swing charts are excellent for entering the market after a correction has occurred. For example, when a main uptrend has turned down, use the 1 day uptrend chart to enter the market when the prior days low is broken by 2 cents.

Swing charts should be watched very carefully with the concept of overbalancing prior time and price points. For example, if in the last three corrections in a major uptrend, corn retraced no more than 10 days and 20 cents, do not consider that the main trend turning down until the current correction exceeds the 10 days and 20 cents of the last biggest correction.

Time and price swing charts have many problems. They often give bad signals to the trader. Using past historical data our research has found that using price correction is not as effective as time calculation. Time, as Gann said is the most important factor.

Percentage retracements of the last swing has proven to be more effective than price retracements. In a bull market the percentage retracements should be less and less as you go up. If the percentage retracements start to get bigger, then it is an indication that the trend is changing. Once a prior swing percentage retracement is exceeded there is a loss of momentum and it is possible that the market is topping.

Another way to check the market's strength is to do a check of the markets price and time swings in the direction of the main trend of the market. When they are less than the prior advancements the market is losing momentum.

To check the strength of the market's strength, you can also figure the market's percentage swing of the last two moves. When this percentage starts declining, there is a possible change of trend coming.

Many times when a swing chart is broken, it also gives another indication of a change of trend, such as a reversal day. This was one of Gann's favorite signals. There are three basic reversal days: A gap up and reverse day, a hook reversal and a key reversal.

So you can monitor both retracements and advances for their swing properties we have programmed a spread sheet module for this purpose. (See Exhibit 16.1)

With this spread sheet template you can put in the high and low of swings as the market is moving up. The spread sheet will automatically calculate the points of the reaction. If the points come up close to a Gann number then more importance is put on it. The spread sheet also calculates the % retracement for each swing.

When the market advances to a new high, the spread sheet will calculate the points move and the percentage of the move. This gives you an indication of the strength of the market. From this you can tell the strength of the market. This tells you that momentum is increasing or declining.

A swing chart can be set up based on the information coming from our spread sheet module. For example, if the price breaks under the prior 3 day low by 2 cents, if the market exceeds a 3 day reaction, if the market reacts more than 20% of the last move up, then start moving the trend line down.

This spread sheet can also be used effectively to spot when there is an overbalance of time, price and percent. When all three confirm an overbalance of time, price and percentage there is a major change of direction.

-B A UP B DN × REACTION +C C UP × ADVANCE 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
-B AOP BON X HEACTION +C COP X ADVANCE 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
300 1000 500 5000 1000 500 10000 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
3/15/35 1 1/4.23/. 3/16/35 3 300.00/. 500 1000 500 50.00/. 1000 500 100.00/. 3/15/95 7 1 14.29/. 3/18/95 3 300.00/. 500 1000 500 50.00/. 1000 500 100.00/. 500 1000 500 50.00/. 1000 500 100.00/. 3/15/95 7 1 14.29/. 3/18/95 3 300.00/. 3/15/95 7 1 14.29/. 3/18/95 3 300.00/. 500 1000 500 50.00/. 1000 500 100.00/.
300 1000 300 3000 3000 3000 10000/ 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
3/15/35 7 1 14.237 3/16/35 3 300.00/. 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00%
<u> </u>
<u>3/15/35 / 1 14.29% 3/18/35 3 300.00%</u>
3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 360.00%
3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP % REACTION -C CDN % DECLINE
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.35 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C CDN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B ADN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/21/95 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B A DN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 3.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 500 100.00% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 3 300.00% +B A DN BUP × REACTION -C C DN × DECLINE 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 3.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 433.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08% 483.1 9.95 189.52% 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/2195 6 600.00% 493.05 6.9 5.25 1.08%
3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 5 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 5 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 5 500 1000 500 50.00% 1000 5 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 5 3/15/95 7 1 14.29% 3/18/95 5



GAPS

Gaps help to tell the future of market activity

G aps are the result of activity which causes prices to jump beyond the past days activity (the high or low of the last day) leaving an open gap. The open gap is usually caused by big buy or sell orders that result from a prior days government report on the market. It could also be caused by other factors such as overnight news from the overseas markets, weather reports and so on. Gaps were one of Gann's most important tools for reading the market.

Most gaps are ordinary in that they have no particular significance. They usually occur in the regular trading range of the market and are usually closed within a brief period of time.

Breakaway gaps are the gaps that breakout from a sideways trading range. These gaps are never filled and usually result in a fast move in the main trend of the market. If they are filled, then in most cases it is a failure and the move will not occur. These gaps usually are on big volume.

Measuring gaps usually occur in an accelerated trend of the market. The market is usually moving up or down with high volume. When these gaps occur, the market is very powerful and reactions against the main trend are almost nil. These gaps often occur in the fast third or fifth waves of the market. They many times become support or resistance areas. Most of the time these gaps can measure where the market is going. They are usually midway gaps. See Exhibit 17.1.

Exhaustion gaps usually occur in the last stage of a fast moving market. They happen before the major high or low is put in. They are the result of the last and final panic buying or selling by the public convinced that the move will never end. These gaps usually occur after a market has been moving for a long period of time. After the exhaustion gap occurs watch the market very carefully. If a reversal day occurs within a few days it usually confirms that it is a valid signal.

Gaps are important to the experienced trader who can match them to the pattern of the market. In the Elliott wave pattern for example, the breakaway gaps would occur out of consolidation ranges such as 2nd and 4th waves which are ABC corrections. Measuring gaps usually occur in the fast moves of the 3rd and 5th waves. Exhaustion gaps usually occur in the 5th and final wave of the market.

As you can see gaps can be very revealing as to where the market is going. To recognize gaps properly you must know what phase of the market you are in.



TOPS AND BOTTOMS

••••••

Tops and bottoms of the market can be defined.

O ne of Gann's most important rules was to sell double and triple tops with a stop above the market and buy double bottoms and triple tops with a stop below the market.

The bigger the amount of time involved in the double or triple top, the more important the resultant move will be. The breakout of a weekly double or triple top is more important than the breakout of a daily double or triple top. The breakout of a monthly double or triple top is more important than a weekly breakout.

In our research we have found that double and triple bottoms are more common than double or triple tops. That is because it is easier to build a base at a bottom than at a top. Tops are usually formed under high volume with many traders in the market and volume is much higher. Bottoms are usually formed with light volume and few traders.

With a double or triple bottom, rising bottoms are stronger than just flat bottoms. With rising bottoms, the market is showing that there is not enough weakness for the second or third bottom to get down to the bottom. Therefore the market is much stronger.

Buying the breakouts of a double or triple tops or selling breakdowns of double and triple bottoms is usually a very safe play as you are going with the direction and momentum of the market.

There is a method that works very well with Gann double and triple tops and bottoms. The method uses a displaced moving average. This method actually defines a double or triple top or bottom. In Exhibit 18.1 we show an example of December Cotton using a very tight 2 day moving average, the solid line, displaced to the right 2 days. The closing price line is dotted. In Exhibit 18.2 there is a blowup of the top of the market. It shows that the market made three tops at 1, 3, 5. Each time before it made the tops it had closed under the displaced moving average. Finally at point 6 the market closed under the low at 2. This broke the market down. This chart produced incredible profit in a very short period of time.

It's necessary to do back testing of prior tops and bottoms of the same

commodity or stock to get the best working combination of moving average and displacement unit. What works in the past with a market, will usually work with a present market.

When the market makes a fourth attempt that results in a failure it will usually result to a fast move the other direction. Watch the fourth attempt closely. When the market brakes below the moving average three times and the closing low point and then reverses and goes through the 4th top reverse and go the direction of the market.

Know where you are in the pattern of the market. A triple bottom is much more important in the beginning phase of a major 5 wave move up. It must know the Elliott wave patterns of the market. Many markets have a particular pattern of their own that develops at important tops and bottoms.

If a breakout occurs from a double or triple bottom, it is important that any reactions must not be over three weeks. If this occurs watch the fourth



EXHIBIT 18.1 Displaced MA chart

week closely for the direction of the market. If that fourth week in a major uptrend has a lower high and then falls under the third week's low the uptrend is probably over.

If the market makes three tops and then breaks down and then makes a fourth and fifth attempt which are lower lows, then the market is very weak and should break sharply. These tops must be defined by the displaced moving average method. If the market makes three bottoms and then breaks up and then makes a fourth and fifth bottom which are higher then the market is very strong. These bottoms also must be defined by the displaced moving average.

This displaced moving average method of defining double and triple tops and bottoms gets you in the market safer than if you took your trade at the exact double or triple tops or bottoms.



EXHIBIT 18.2 Blowup of displaced MA chart



VOLUME & OPEN INTEREST

Volume and open interest is what drives the market.

G ann felt that volume and open interest was very important to indicate market direction. This chapter will explain how to use these tools for indications of direction of trend.

Volume is what drives the market. This indicates if there is increasing demand for the supply in the market. Look closely at the trend of the volume. This will help you determine if trend of the market will continue.

Volume is the number of contracts that traded during the day. It represents either the purchases or sales, but not both. The more activity on the floor the more volume there is. This can increase due to day trading or overnight trading.

If volume does not increase or decrease then speculators feel the market will remain steady. Volume usually remains steady in consolidation areas, usually at low price levels.

If price moves out of a consolidation area with increased volume, then there is a good chance that the price move will be the beginning of a good move. If price moves out of a consolidation area and volume does not increase, then there is a good chance that it is a false breakout and the price will fall back into the consolidation area.

If prices start to fall out of a consolidation area with increase volume it is significant. If prices start to rise out of a consolidation area with increased volume then it is significant.

If when price falls the volume starts to fall, then the market may be ready for a turn back up.

If the volume increases when price falls back to a base, it means that traders are buying it as they think it is a bargain. If volume increase when prices run up to a resistance area, it means traders are unloading it thinking price is too high.

Volume also increases when the market runs into stops. The floor traders often times run the market into these areas when they can. If the market has run up into stops and does not continue, then these is a good chance prices will fall back as it just got the weak shorts who had to put in close stops.

For a big trend to continue, the volume must continue to rise. Watch the volume closely as it will give you the clue to the market direction. Without increasing volume, prices will not continue to increase.

After a long advance in prices many times the volume increases dramatically because small speculators are jumping into the market near the top thinking that prices will continue up forever.

After a long decline in the market many times volume will dramatically increase because the public who have been long the market and loosing lots of money are finally giving up and throwing in the towel. In this case the market will soon reverse as professional traders are buying the contracts from the small speculators.

When prices break out of a consolidation area and make their first advance and then decline, if the volume runs up and then declines it is bullish.

When prices break down out of a consolidation area and makes their first decline and then makes the first correction back up, if it decline is on heavy volume and the retracement back up is on declining volume then this is a good indication for a good move down.

Open interest is when there is a new buyer of a contract and a new seller. These two parties cross. The buyer buys and the seller sells making a complete transaction. The open interest then increases by 1 contract.

When prices increase with rising volume and open interest increases this is a further indication that the market will rise. Having all three rise is very bullish.

If prices are rising, with rising volume and decreasing open interest, then it is a good indication that there is short covering in the market. These traders are liquidating their contracts to get out of the market. When this happens the market will not trend much further.

If prices are stable and open interest is rising there is a good indication that positions are being accumulated. This is especially true if you are in a level of support such as wave 2 or 4 in the Elliott wave pattern.

If prices are stable and open interest is stable, there is no indiction of any change of trend. Look for the market to break out of a consolidation range with rising open interest and volume to change this stable condition of the market.

If prices are stable and open interest is falling then there is a good indication that the market is loosing interest and the public is going elsewhere.



GANN CHANNELS

This little known technique is the best channeling method know.

Gann placed the geometric angles on important tops, bottoms to indicate the trend of the market. These geometric angles accurately measure space, time, volume and price. The angles to draw on these tops and bottoms are the 1x8, 1x4, 1x3, 1x2, 3x4, 2/3, 1x1, 4x3, 3x2, 2x1, 3x1, 4x1 and 8x1. See Exhibit 20.1. These angles determine all important tops and bottoms. These angles drawn on a chart divide time and price into proportionate parts.

The angles should be drawn off of the 0 point - 1 square up, 1, 2(C), 2(C)



one square up 3(5), and 4(C), 4(C) one square up. See Exhibit 20.2. To determine the angle you should draw you should look at the price it is moving off of. If the price is, for example, at a bottom of 72, then the market will move up 72 hours, days, weeks or months. Look first at those angles. They will be one of the angles in Exhibit 20.1. You may just want to use the best angle that fits initial price move best.

What I mean by one square up are the squares that are on the Gann overlays. For example the squares on the 144 overlay are 144/8 = 18 or multiples thereof. That is they are 2.25, 4.5, 9, 18, 36, 72. The square of 120/8 = 15 or multiples thereof. That is they are 7.5, 15, 30, 60. The square of 90/8 = 11.25. Those multiples are 5.625, 11.25, 22.50, 45, 90. The square of 52/8 = 6.5. Multiples are 13, 23, and 46. You must know the square overlay that the market is working in. Once the height of the channel is determined, prices will usually remain in the channel height until the market accelerates or direction the market changes trend. In Exhibit 20.3 you can see one point where the market accellerated and then it finally changed trend. If the volume of the market picks up the height of the channel may increase to the next multiple in the overlay. Where an angle starts off you can draw a square which is the same measurement high and wide. Timing and price projection should be



EXHIBIT 20.2 Channel lines on example chart

based on this square.

Using a fast MACD and a slow stochastic on your charts you can determine where to buy the bottom of 2(C) and 4(C). In most cases the MACD will get above the center point, putting the market in a strong position and the stochastic will drop down to the 20% line and give a double bottom with divergence. In buying watch the stochastic and the bars on the chart. When the market moves up and makes a new daily high after the turn up of stochastic, you should buy the market. It is also possible to use the stochastic to take profits when price gets to the top of the channel and divergence is occurring. Remember never go short the market based on stochastics in an up trend as the market can continue to advance.

After the 5th wave top is made and MACD gets under the center point, you can sell the first stochastic high B wave and go short the market. The procedure is just the reverse of buying the bottom. Watch the down wave C very carefully to determine in this is in fact a down wave beginning to start or just and ABC and resumption of the main trend up again.



EXHIBIT 20.3 Channel lines on real chart

TYPES OF ORDERS

•••••

The method of entering of the market can affect your profits.

You need to have a consistent plan for entering and exiting the market. There are different types of orders for entering the market. Most of the exchanges will accept any of the types of orders. The orders you place will be designed for two purposes. One to enter into a new position and to exit or stop out of your current position with a stop loss. The following are the types of orders you can use:

MARKET ORDER

When you use this type of order, you want the floor broker to fill your order immediately without any delay in time. It is used by traders who want to enter or exit the market as fast as they can without any regard to price. In most cases when this type of order is used you will loose a few points on the filled of the order by a floor scalper.

OR BETTER ORDERS

With this type of order, you want the floor broker to fill you at the price you put on the order or even better than you put. If this is an order to buy it is put above the market and if market price drops to your price or lower your order will be filled. You will rarely find that you get a better fill than you put as your price on the order. Sell or better orders are placed below the price put on the order. When the price rises and hits or goes high than the price put on the order it is filled. Again, rarely is the ordered filled at a price better than the one put on the order.

Some successful traders use this type of order to enter a trade based on a timing point. If they are not filled within a specified amount of time they change the order to market.

MARKET- IF -TOUCHED ORDERS

A market-if-touched sell order is placed below the indicated price on the order. If and when prices go up and hit that price, it is filled at the market. Therefore it is possible that the fill could be below the price put on the ticket. In the case of market-if-touched buy orders if the market falls down and hits the price on the order it is filled at the market price. If order is good to use if you have calculated the exact price the market should go to and you want out if it hits that price.

MARKET-ON-CLOSE

This type of order is used if you want out at the market in the last closing minutes of the day. Your order becomes a market order and fills at any price at the close of the day. This type of order is used by day-traders who want out on the close of the day at any cost. Also many traders enter the market based of how it looks like it is going to close. In this situation market-on-close orders do the job. Market-on-close orders can also be a limit order. The price must not exceed the limit price on the order or it doesn't fill.

ONE-CANCELS-THE-OTHER

With this type of order you can put an order in at a certain price and another order in a price. If one of the orders is filled the other order is cancelled.

STOPS

Gann constantly said, always put a protective stop loss in the market as the market could turn against you anytime. Forecasting the market is all probabilities and therefore you need protection, just in case the market doesn't cooperate with you. This protection is necessary to preserve your capital. Gann felt that the stop should be placed as soon as your entered your buy order.

Stops can be placed on the basis of money using the rule of dividing your risk capital into 10 equal parts so no more than 10% is ever exposed to the market. This was explained in an earlier chapter.

Stops can be placed below the last swing bottom in the market. This swing bottom should be placed on the basis of time, price and percentage retracement swing charts. By using stops you will in many cases remain in the market for the entire market move.

TIME STOPS

Many traders use a time stop. The exchanges won't accept them, but they can save a lot of money. With this type of stop, if the market does not give you a profit within a certain time period, for example 3 days, you simply exit the position.

MAKING IT WORK

Prove it to yourself and make a trading plan.

I f you want to be successful, follow all the rules in this course. Everything that you read and learn in this course must be proved to yourself. Do not jump in and start trading until you are ready to trade. All the trading techniques must be programmed into your mind so you don't even think about them anymore. You must feel completely at ease and have no fear toward trading whatsoever. You must be ready to enter into the market when the public is being scared out. You must not enter into the market when the public feels that nothing can go wrong. 90% of the public looses money in the market.

The first thing you must do is get files of long term daily data that go back long enough to prove that Gann rules do work. Go back using the data and prove all rules that you have learned. You can use long term paper charts for this, or you can use long term computer files for this. If you are using computer files, make sure you have the equipment that makes these files look like long term paper charts on your computer screen. That is, you should have a program like SuperCharts or TradeStation that can display long term files. The program should be Windows compatible so you can take advantage of the virtual screen of an advanced video card like the Number Nine card. This card can act as a port with a mouse hardware pan on a screen 4 times larger than the screen you are looking at.

The Excel spread sheet program is a necessity for trading successfully. Gann Masters has programmed a template for this program that came with this course. The template has all the necessary table, circle and projection charts for trading successfully in the markets.

The biggest mistake that new traders make, is they don't spend the time to learn how to trade the successful rules of the market. They want to get into the action of trading the market immediately.

After you have learned the rules of Gann and have proved that they work, you are ready to trade. After you have successfully traded for sometime, it is necessary always to review the rules that you have learned. This constant reviewing keeps your mind alert and many times reviewing rules gives you even more insight on how to trade the markets.

Gann Masters has made a subliminal tape that can be used on regular intervals, usually before you go to sleep at night. This tape has many of the successful rules of trading on it. It helps your mind avoid the pitfalls of the market and strive to trade successfully.

Every trader is different and every trader that reads the same rules of trading will trade differently. The rules of successful trading that you pick up in this course for your own trading should be written down on a piece of paper and reviewed on a constant basis. Sometimes the rules need to be changed to accommodate the current market. Keep these rules refreshed in your mind constantly.

If you are going to be successful at trading, you must plan your way to profit. You must develop a complete trading plan for the entire bull or bear campaign from beginning to end. This plan must be followed to the letter with strict discipline. The following is a description of how one very successful



EXHIBIT 22.1 Elliott Wave Structure

Gann trader works his trading plan.

The first thing he does is scan his long term charts for past harmonic years in the future markets looking for similar trading patterns and exact anniversary dates to match today's market. The harmonic years are 5, 10, 15, 30, 45, 60, 90 and 100 years back. To do this he overlays these harmonic years on top of each other along with the current year. Many times he will find similiar trading patterns and anniversary dates hitting where they should. When he confirms the harmonic years that the current year is following, be continues the next phase of the plan.

Next, he uses all of the Gann cycle techniques for finding the next probable low if the next move is going to be up. He uses, for example, top to top, bottom to bottom and top to bottom time counts. If he is looking for a bull market, he will check the matching harmonic years to see where the major low should be basing this on both pattern and anniversary dates. Sometimes the low may be a double or triple higher bottom. He makes sure all the charts have turned to the upside overbalancing time, price and percentage moves, using quarterly, monthly, weekly and daily charts. He checks the market with cycle analysis finding out where the next cycle should be. This works best using the master time and price overlays of 90, 52 and 144. He checks retracements and resistance in the market and finds all important price numbers based on the square of 9 or the square of 4. He also uses either the square of 9 or the square of 4 for time counts from the beginning of the contract. He checks the market for its vibration rate, using the square table charts. When he knows the market has in fact bottomed at point 0 he uses pattern recognition and probable retracements to determine where he is and if the picture is coming together. (See exhibit 22.0) He waits for 1, (A), (B) and 2(C) to form. He then buys 3 contracts at 2(c) with a stop below 0. The market now continues up to (1) and he now liquidates 2 of his initial positions and moves his stop up on the remaining position to a breakeven, which includes commissions. When the market gets up to 3(5) he waits for the (A), (B), 4(C) correction to form. He then waits for the 1, (a), (b) and 2(c) to form (not shown) of the final 5th wave. He enters now 3 positions at 2(c) with a stop below 0. When the market rallies up to (1) he sells 2 positions and moves his stop up on his last purchase position to breakeven. When the market hits the top of wave 5 he sells his 2 positions and completes the trading program.

This method of trading works because it is based on proven Gann trading techniques which he has proven to himself. He has done the same trading plan over and over again. The routine of the plan is set in his mind and he has no reason or cause for fear of the market. He is always protected with stops and most of the time his stops are at breakeven, so he usually has no risk associated with his trading.

APPENDIX A GANN MASTERS TEST APPLICATION

.....

Besides proving it to yourself, you must prove it to us

We feel that it is very necessary for you to study this course over and over again and test out all Gann techniques before you trade in the real markets. We want to to be successful at trading the markets. We also feel that you need some incentive to study the contents of this course. We are therefore requesting that when you complete this course and feel you have learned the Gann techniques of trading that you take a final written test made up by Gann Masters. The test is free and is part of the couse.

If you pass the test, you will get an official certificate saying that you have successfully completed the Gann Masters Course and passed the final exam. You will at that time be entitled to receive the Gann Mind Tape which is a subliminal tape designed to help you remember many of the Gann principals of trading as well as handle the psychology of trading successfully. Please do not think the exam is easy. It is very difficult to pass. On the test, there will be true and false, multiple choice and essay questions. It will be an open book test as we have no way to enforce a closed book exam. If you pass the test, it will be an important credential to add to your others such as B.S. M.B.A. and PhD.

If you fail, you will have to retake the exam. There will be an additional charge of \$10.00 to retake it. So it is in your best interest to pass the exam on the first try.

When you are ready to take the exam, please fill out the test application blank which is Exhibit A.1 on the next page. You must take the test within 4 months of receiving the last chapter of this course, after that you will be charged \$10.00 to take the exam.

GANN MASTER'S TEST APPLICATION

Yes, please send me the Gann Masters test to prove that I have successfully studied and learned the Gann Masters Course. I understand that if I successfully pass the test, I will receive my Gann Mind Tape plus an official certificate providing that I have successful completed the Gann Masters Course and that I have passed the test.

If I fail to pass the test, I will have to retake the test at a charge of \$10.00 per test. This is a very difficult test. Please be prepared. Study and know your material. It will be an open book exam.

You must take the test within 4 months of the time that you receive the last chapter of the course. After that you will be charged \$10.00 to take the test.

Name
Company
Address
City
State
Zip
Telephone
Fax
Date
Comment
EXHIBIT A.1 Gann Masters test application

APPENDIX B GANN MASTERS TRADING CERTIFICATION

Prove it to yourself and others with an official test.

One of the biggest mistakes you can make is to trade the markets while you are learning the Gann Masters Course. Please if you can help it, do not trade until you have completed the couse and have passed the Gann Masters test. You must prove with study and work that every technique that you learn in this couse works. You will need to spend many long hours of study doing this. It will pay off in benefits later on when you start to trade the real markets.

Proving trading techniques by going back and testing past data and trading for real is two different things. We recommend that you go one step further and take the Gann Masters Trading Certification. This is a real time test of your trading abilities. When you start this trading certification, you will receive trading order blanks. With these order blanks you must enter 10 trades within 6 months and trade an imaginary \$50,000. The procedure is as follows:

1) You can use any of the types of orders explained in Chapter 21.

2) You must complete the order blanks and send them in at the close of the day to make the theoretical trade. These orders must be enclosed in an envelope that is cancelled by the U.S. Post Office that same day. Therefore you must put in in a Post Office Box that is picked up and cancelled the same day. The orders can also be faxed to us at 417-886-5180 on the same day.

3) The price of the entry or exit of the market will be the same as the close of that day. Stops and MIT orders will be filled at the exact price of the order intraday and no slippage will be assumed.

4) All U.S. Commodities and the 500 S&P stocks can be traded for this certification.

5) At the end of the 6 months a profit or loss statement will be generated from this trading test. The results of the test will be officially certified and will be official and can be used as reference by you to get new business if you are a CTA, trading advisor or broker. You can also use the results just to prove to yourself that you are ready to trade the real markets with real money profitably. In fact we think this certification should be requested by all clients wishing someone else to trade or advise them as to their trading.

TRADING CERTIFICATION

Yes, please enroll me the Gann Masters certification program. I understand that this is a real time trading trial period and is certified by U.S. Mail or via fax machine. I will receive necessary order blanks that must be mailed with postage stamp or faxed to Gann Masters by the end of the trading day. This will be trading with an imaginary \$50,000. The trading must be completed at the end of 6 months and there must be 10 trades in the program. I will be given the certified results and the end of the test period. This trading certification will be official and I can use it to get new business if I am a CTA, trading advisior or broker. The results can also be used just to prove to yourself that you can trade the markets profitably.

I have enclosed \$69.00 for the program's cost.

Name
Company
Address
City
State
Zip
Telephone
Fax
Date
Comments
EXHIBIT B.1 Gann Masters Certification Form

APPENDIX C GANN MASTERS CATALOG LISTING

These are some of the products that we think you need to trade with.

1) Gann Masters Excel Template 3.5" Floppy (1.00)FREE
2) SuperCharts(5.00)\$249.95
3a) MicroSoft Excel Spread Sheet 5.0 (Reg. Version)(5.00)\$315.00
3b) Microsoft Excel Spread Sheet 5.0 (Competitive Upgrade)(5.00)\$119.00
You must have a old Excel or competitors program
3c) Microsoft Excel Spread Sheet 5.0 (Academic Version)(5.00)\$99.00
You must be a student in high school or college
4) MAX:CHART(3.00)\$79.95
5) GannTrader(10.00)\$1295
6) Windows 3.1(5.00)\$75.00
7) Parrallel Ruler(2.50)\$6.95
8) Ratio Compass Divider(2.50)\$69.95
9) Plastic Overlay Material (Roll)(5.00)\$19.95
10)SCUF Permanent Overlay Market(1.00)\$1.50
11) Ehrlich Cycle Finder(3.00)\$69.95
K&E Chart paper 11 x 16.5 (100 sheets)(5.00)\$25.00
12) 10 x10 to the inch - 5th line highlighted
13) 20 x 20 to the inch - 5th line highlighted
14) 16 x 16 to the inch 4th line highlighted
15) Big Paper Gann Charts (\$3.50 each plus \$3.00 shipping)
Please list order of charts.
Daily goes back 1 year
Weekly goes back 5 years
Monthly goes back up to 30 years
16) Please send me information and prices on the Number Nine virtual screen
card.
17) Please send me information on your lastest trading computer setup.
We feature the latest Pentium Trading Computers and equipment.
18) Please send me information on obtaining real-time or delayed-time quotes
on DBC Signal. (Gann Masters is a Signal dealer)
19) Please send me information on long term Gann data on disk.
Shipping is in (\$000), Prices are subject to change.

GANN MASTERS ORDER FORM

Name
Company
Address
City
State
Zip
Telephone
Fax
Please list items order or information requests and amount of order. Send check or use VISA, MC or AMAX number for order. Add shipping and also add sales tax if you live in the state of Missouri. Send, fax or call orders to
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.
Gann Masters, 2508 W. Grayrock Dr, Springfield, MO 65810 800-288- 4266, 417-882-9697, Fax 417-886-5180.

EXHIBIT C.1 Gann Masters Order Form

APPENDIX D

GANN EXAMPLE CHARTS

One picture is worth a thousand words.

This a chapter giving visual charts of all the Gann techniques. Most people know the reason the Gann courses and books are so confusing, it is that there are so few charts the back up the text. Remember the Chinese proverb "one picuture is worth a 1000 words".

In this chapter we have gone through many of the Gann techniques found throughout the Gann courses and books and those recommended by the Gann traders that we know. We have illustrated them to show you how these techniques work.

You must go though each example chart and memorize the techniques. All of these charts were produced on either SuperCharts or Trade Station by permission of Omega Research. Some of the data goes back 40 years. W.D. Gann stressed having good data going back far enough to do proper research. He said if you have the right data going back far enough, you could easily trade any market profitably. Most people trade charts that are based on only 6 months of data. No wonder 90% of the people lose the money they put in the market.

We are working on our data files and taking them back even futher. To do high level research you need good data going back up to 100 years. Sometimes the 80, 90, and 100 year cycles are what the market is following. If you don't have those charts, you are out of luck. Sometime in the future, we plan on making this data to Gann Master students.

All of these charts were researched on our Trader's World computer designed for trading. It has the excellent #9GXE virtual screen video card which has a virtual screen 4 times the size of these example charts. This type of equipment really makes research and trading much simplier. If you are interested in one of these computers give us a call at 1-800-ATT-GANN.





_












VAMJJASOND92 FMAMJJASOND93 FMAMJJASOND94 FMAMJJASO









186 Gann Masters





188 Gann Masters

























